# Lecture Notes <br> PHY 321 - Classical Mechanics I <br> http:/ /www.pa.msu.edu / people/pratts/phy321 <br> Instructor: Scott Pratt, prattsc@msu.edu 

These notes are NOT meant to be a substitute for a book. Two texts Classical Mechanics by John R. Taylor, or Classical Dynamics of Particles and Systems by S.T. Thornton and J.B. Marion are highly recommended. These notes are mainly meant to outline what was covered in class and to provide something students can print and annotate rather than taking full lecture notes.

## Contents

1 Dimensions, Scalars, Vectors and Tensors ..... 1
1.1 Dimensions and Units ..... 1
1.2 Scalars, Vectors, Matrices and Tensors ..... 1
1.3 Exercises ..... 9
2 Newton's Laws ..... 12
2.1 Air Resistance in One Dimension ..... 12
2.2 Projectile Motion ..... 14
2.3 Motion in a Magnetic Field ..... 18
2.4 Conservation of Energy ..... 20
2.5 Solving an Integral Numerically ..... 21
2.6 Numerically Solving Equations of Motion from Potentials ..... 22
2.7 Conservation of Momentum ..... 22
2.8 Conservation of Angular Momentum ..... 24
2.9 Symmetries and Conservation Laws ..... 28
2.10 Exercises ..... 30
3 Oscillations ..... 34
3.1 Harmonic Oscillator ..... 34
3.2 Damped Oscillators ..... 36
3.3 Sinusoidally Driven Oscillators ..... 38
3.4 Alternative Derivation for Driven Oscillators ..... 39
3.5 Resonance Widths: the $Q$ factor ..... 41
3.6 Principal of Superposition and Periodic Forces (Fourier Transforms) ..... 42
3.7 Response to Transient Force ..... 45
3.8 Solving Equations of Motion Numerically ..... 46
3.9 Exercises ..... 48
4 Gravity and Central Forces ..... 51
4.1 Gravity ..... 51
4.2 Tidal Forces ..... 53
4.3 Deriving Kepler's Laws ..... 56
4.4 Centrifugal Potential/Barrier and the Effective Radial Potential ..... 61
4.5 Stability of Orbits ..... 64
4.6 Scattering and Cross Sections ..... 66
4.7 Center-of-Mass Coordinates ..... 68
4.8 Rutherford Scattering ..... 70
4.9 Exercises ..... 73
5 Rotating Coordinate Systems ..... 77
5.1 Accelerating Frames ..... 77
5.2 Rotating Frames ..... 77
5.3 Coriolis Force ..... 78
5.4 The Foucault Pendulum ..... 80
5.5 Exercises ..... 82
6 Lagrangians and the Calculus of Variations ..... 83
6.1 Calculus of Variations and the Euler-Lagrange Equation ..... 83
6.2 Auxiliary Constraints ..... 85
6.3 Lagrangians ..... 89
6.4 Proving Lagrange's Equations of Motion from Newton's Laws ..... 90
6.5 Lagrangian Examples ..... 91
6.6 Small Vibrations and Normal Modes ..... 92
6.7 Addressing the Small Oscillation Problem with Mutiple Degrees of Freedom with Linear Algebra ..... 97
6.8 Conservation Laws ..... 99
6.9 Exercises ..... 101

## 1 Dimensions, Scalars, Vectors and Tensors

### 1.1 Dimensions and Units

All physical quantities have dimension. For mechanics, the basic dimensions are mass, length and time. One can also add electric charge for classical electrodynamics. All quantities can be expressed in terms of these dimensions. For example, the dimension of velocity are distance/time, and the dimension of force is mass multiplied by length divided by time squared. All the terms of any valid physical equation must have the same dimension. For example, if $\boldsymbol{t}, \boldsymbol{v} \boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{a}$ are time, velocity, position and acceleration, the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
x=v t+a t \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

is invalid because the last term has dimensions of velocity whereas the other term have dimensions of distance. Angles are dimensionless. Thus $\boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{v} \boldsymbol{t} \cos \boldsymbol{\theta}$ is dimensionally valid.
If one were to expand an exponential function in a Taylor expansion,

$$
\begin{equation*}
e^{x}=1+x+\frac{x^{2}}{2}+\frac{x^{3}}{3!}+\cdots \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

one immediately sees that $\boldsymbol{x}$ must be dimensionless. Otherwise one would be adding terms with different dimensions. The same holds for sine or cosine functions. If a student were to write the formula $\sin (v t+\gamma)$, where $\boldsymbol{v}$ and $t$ are velocity and time, on an exam, they would be immediately penalized because the argument of the sine function is not dimensionless.
Physical expressions must be dimensionally consistent, but consistency with units only comes into play once the expressions are evaluated numerically. For example, if one has the expression $\boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{v} \boldsymbol{t}$, and if velocity is meters per second and time is in seconds, then $\boldsymbol{x}$ must be expressed in meters if the numerical values are to be accurately calculated. The calculation would also work fine if the velocity were in miles per hour, but then time should be expressed in hours and $\boldsymbol{x}$ would be expressed in miles. Thus, one should keep in mind the difference between units and dimensions. Dimensions are mass, length, time, charge, length per time, etc., whereas examples of units are as meters, light years and kilograms. Once one considers problems with more involved calculations, it is highly recommended to perform all algebraic manipulations with symbols so that one can check dimensional consistency. This allows one to more easily recognize and track down algebraic errors. Finally, we point out that although angles are dimensionless, they are not unitless. The Taylor expansion, $\sin \boldsymbol{\theta}=\boldsymbol{\theta}-\boldsymbol{\theta}^{3} / 6+\boldsymbol{\theta}^{5} / \mathbf{1 2 0}-\cdots$, is valid only when $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ is in radians. This is akin to saying that a count, e.g. a number of eggs, which is dimensionless, might be expressed in terms of the number of dozens or the number of gross.
When an equation is dimensionally consistent, one can change the units, and the equation will still work, because the change of units affects each term in the equation by the same factor, and multiplying the entire equation by a constant factor does not change its validity.

### 1.2 Scalars, Vectors, Matrices and Tensors

A scalar is a quantity with a value that is independent of how one rotates the coordinate system. For example, the three-dimensional displacement vector $(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{z})$ is not a scalar because it
changes under rotation. Neither is the velocity, $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}=\left(\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{x}}, \boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{y}}, \boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{z}}\right)$. Examples of scalars are mass, the relative time between events, or the speed, $s \equiv|\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}|$. A vector has magnitude and direction. Under rotation, the magnitude stays the same but the direction changes. Scalars have no spatial index, whereas a three-dimensional vector has 3 indices, e.g. the position $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}$ has components $r_{1}, r_{2}, r_{3}$, which might be referred to as $\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{z}$ or for momentum might be $\boldsymbol{p}_{x}, \boldsymbol{p}_{\boldsymbol{y}}, \boldsymbol{p}_{z}$. In addition to vectors and scalars, there are matrices, which have two indices. One also has objects with 3 or four indices. These are called tensors of rank $\boldsymbol{n}$, where $\boldsymbol{n}$ is the number of indices. A matrix is a rank-two tensor. The Levi-Civita symbol, $\epsilon_{i j k}$ used for cross products, is a rank-three tensor. There are several categories of changes of coordinate system. The observer can translate the origin, might move with a different velocity, or might rotate their coordinate axes. For instance, a particle's position vector changes when the origin is translated, but its velocity does not. When you study relativity you will find that quantities you thought of as scalars, such as time or electric potential, are actually parts of four-dimensional vectors and that changes of the velocity of the reference frame act in a similar way to rotations, but relativistic effects are small when velocities are small compared to the speed of light, and in that limit time does not change under changes of the velocity of the reference frame. Thus, for our purposes, time is considered a scalar.
Given the number of spatial indices, or rank, one knows exactly how a quantity transforms under rotation. Thus, the velocity vector, the displacement vector, or the angular momentum vector all transform identically. I.e. under a rotation around the $\boldsymbol{z}$-axis by an angle $\phi$, the components of a vector in the primed coordinate system are re-expressed in terms of the components in the previous, un-primed basis,

$$
\begin{align*}
x^{\prime} & =x \cos \phi+y \sin \phi  \tag{1.3}\\
y^{\prime} & =y \cos \phi-x \sin \phi \\
v_{x}^{\prime} & =v_{x} \cos \phi+v_{y} \sin \phi \\
v_{y}^{\prime} & =v_{y} \cos \phi-v_{x} \sin \phi
\end{align*}
$$

Scalars are unchanged by rotation. Vectors are rotated by multiplying by a matrix, and for a vector $\vec{r}$, the transformed vector is

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{i}^{\prime}=\sum_{j} R_{i j} r_{j} \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{R}_{i j}$ is the rotation matrix. For a second rank tensor, $\boldsymbol{A}_{i j}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{i \ell}^{\prime}=\sum_{j k} R_{i j} A_{j k} R_{k \ell}^{-1} \tag{1.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Unit Vectors

Also known as basis vectors, unit vectors point in the direction of the coordinate axes, have unit norm, and are orthogonal to one another. Sometimes this is referred to as an orthonormal basis,

$$
\hat{e}_{i} \cdot \hat{e}_{j}=\delta_{i j}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 0 & 0  \tag{1.6}\\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

Here, $\boldsymbol{\delta}_{i j}$ is unity when $i=j$ and is zero otherwise. It is known as the Kronecker delta. This is called the unit matrix, because you can multiply it with any other matrix and not change the matrix. The "dot" denotes the dot product, $\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}=A_{1} B_{1}+A_{2} B_{2}+A_{3} B_{3}=|A||B| \cos \theta_{A B}$. Sometimes unit vectors are labeled $\hat{\boldsymbol{x}}, \hat{\boldsymbol{y}}$ and $\hat{\boldsymbol{z}}$. Vectors can be decomposed in terms of unit vectors,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{r}=r_{1} \hat{e}_{1}+r_{2} \hat{e}_{2}+r_{3} \hat{e}_{3} \tag{1.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The vector components $\boldsymbol{r}_{1}, \boldsymbol{r}_{2}$ and $\boldsymbol{r}_{3}$ might be called $\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}$ and $\boldsymbol{z}$ for a displacement or $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{x}}, \boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{y}}$ and $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{z}}$ for a velocity.

## Rotations and Coordinate Transformation

Here, we use rotations as an example of matrices and their operations. One can consider a different orthonormal basis $\hat{e}_{1}^{\prime}, \hat{e}_{2}^{\prime}$ and $\hat{e}_{3}^{\prime}$. The same vector $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}$ mentioned above can also be expressed in the new basis,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{r}=r_{1}^{\prime} \hat{e}_{1}^{\prime}+r_{2}^{\prime} \hat{e}_{2}^{\prime}+r_{3}^{\prime} \hat{e}_{3}^{\prime} \tag{1.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Even though it is the same vector, the components have changed as $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}$ is being expressed in a new coordinate system. Each new unit vector $\hat{e}_{i}^{\prime}$ can be expressed as a linear sum of the previous vectors,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{e}_{i}^{\prime}=\sum_{j} U_{i j} \hat{e}_{j} \tag{1.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the matrix $\boldsymbol{U}$ can be found by taking the dot product of both sides with $\hat{\boldsymbol{e}}_{\boldsymbol{k}}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\hat{e}_{k} \cdot \hat{e}_{i}^{\prime} & =\sum_{j} \boldsymbol{U}_{i j} \hat{e}_{k} \cdot \hat{e}_{j} \\
& =\sum_{j} \boldsymbol{U}_{i j} \delta_{j k}=\boldsymbol{U}_{i k} \tag{1.10}
\end{align*}
$$

Thus, the rotation matrix has components $\boldsymbol{U}_{i j}$ that are equal to the cosine of the angle between new unit vector $\hat{e}_{i}^{\prime}$ and the old unit vector $\hat{e}_{j}$.

$$
U=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\hat{e}_{1}^{\prime} \cdot \hat{e}_{1} & \hat{e}_{1}^{\prime} \cdot \hat{e}_{2} & \hat{e}_{1}^{\prime} \cdot \hat{e}_{3}  \tag{1.11}\\
\hat{e}_{2}^{\prime} \cdot \hat{e}_{1} & \hat{e}_{2}^{\prime} \cdot \hat{e}_{2} & \hat{e}_{2}^{\prime} \cdot \hat{e}_{3} \\
\hat{e}_{3}^{\prime} \cdot \hat{e}_{1} & \hat{e}_{3}^{\prime} \cdot \hat{e}_{2} & \hat{e}_{3}^{\prime} \cdot \hat{e}_{3}
\end{array}\right), \quad U_{i j}=\hat{e}_{i}^{\prime} \cdot \hat{e}_{j}=\cos \theta_{i j} .
$$

Note that the matrix is not symmetric, $\boldsymbol{U}_{i j} \neq \boldsymbol{U}_{j i}$. One can also look at the inverse transformation, by switching the primed and unprimed coordinates,

$$
\begin{align*}
\hat{e}_{i} & =\sum_{j} U_{i j}^{-1} \hat{e}_{j}^{\prime},  \tag{1.12}\\
U_{i j}^{-1} & =\hat{e}_{i} \cdot \hat{e}_{j}^{\prime}=U_{j i}
\end{align*}
$$

The definition of transpose of a matrix, $\boldsymbol{M}_{i j}^{t}=\boldsymbol{M}_{\boldsymbol{j} i}$, allows one to state this as

$$
\begin{equation*}
U^{-1}=U^{t} \tag{1.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

A matrix obeying Eq. (1.13) defines what is known as a unitary, or orthogonal, transformation. The matrix $\boldsymbol{U}$ can be used to transform any vector to the new basis. Consider a vector

$$
\begin{align*}
\vec{r} & =r_{1} \hat{e}_{1}+r_{2} \hat{e}_{2}+r_{3} \hat{e}_{3}=\sum_{i} r_{i} \hat{e}_{i}  \tag{1.14}\\
& =r_{1}^{\prime} \hat{e}_{1}^{\prime}+r_{2}^{\prime} \hat{e}_{2}^{\prime}+r_{3}^{\prime} \hat{e}_{3}^{\prime}=\sum_{i} r_{i}^{\prime} \hat{e}_{i}^{\prime}
\end{align*}
$$

This is the same vector expressed as a sum over two different sets of basis vectors. The coefficients $\boldsymbol{r}_{i}$ and $\boldsymbol{r}_{i}^{\prime}$ represent components of the same vector. The relation between them can be found by taking the dot product of each side with one of the unit vectors, $\hat{e}_{i}$, which gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{i}=\hat{e}_{i} \cdot \vec{r}=\sum_{j} \hat{e}_{i} \cdot \hat{e}_{j}^{\prime} r_{j}^{\prime} \tag{1.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using Eq. (1.12) one can see that the transformation of $\boldsymbol{r}$ can be also written in terms of $\boldsymbol{U}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{i}=\sum_{j} U_{i j}^{-1} r_{j}^{\prime} \tag{1.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, the matrix that transforms the coordinates of the unit vectors, Eq. (1.12) is the same one that transforms the coordinates of a vector, Eq. (1.16).

## Example 1.1: Rotation from Unit Vectors

Find the rotation matrix $\boldsymbol{U}$ for finding the components in the primed coordinate system given from those in the unprimed system, given that the unit vectors in the new system are found by rotating the coordinate system by and angle $\phi$ about the $z$ axis.
Solution:
In this case

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{e}_{1}^{\prime} & =\cos \phi \hat{e}_{1}-\sin \phi \hat{e}_{2} \\
\hat{e}_{2}^{\prime} & =\sin \phi \hat{e}_{1}+\cos \phi \hat{e}_{2} \\
\hat{e}_{3}^{\prime} & =\hat{e}_{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

By inspecting Eq. (1.10),

$$
U=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\cos \phi & -\sin \phi & 0 \\
\sin \phi & \cos \phi & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

Under a unitary transformation $\boldsymbol{U}$ (or basis transformation) scalars are unchanged, whereas vectors $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}$ and matrices $\boldsymbol{M}$ change as

$$
\begin{align*}
r_{i}^{\prime} & =\sum_{j} U_{i j} r_{j}  \tag{1.17}\\
M_{i j}^{\prime} & =\sum_{k m} U_{i k} M_{k m} U_{m j}^{-1}
\end{align*}
$$

Note that all vectors, e.g. momentum, displacement, velocity, transform according to the same rotation matrix.
Physical quantities with no spatial indices are scalars (or pseudoscalars if they depend on righthanded vs. left-handed coordinate systems), and are unchanged by unitary transformations. This includes quantities like the trace of a matrix - the matrix itself had indices but none remain after performing the trace.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Tr} M \equiv \sum_{i} M_{i i} \tag{1.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because there are no remaining indices, one expects it to be a scalar. Indeed one can see this,

$$
\begin{align*}
\operatorname{Tr} M^{\prime} & =\sum_{i j m} U_{i j} M_{j m} U_{m i}^{-1}  \tag{1.19}\\
& =\sum_{i j m} M_{j m} U_{m i}^{-1} U_{i j} \\
& =\sum_{m j} M_{j m} \delta_{m j} \\
& =\sum_{j} M_{j j}=\operatorname{Tr} M
\end{align*}
$$

A similar example is the determinant of a matrix, which is also a scalar.

## Vector and Matrix Operations

- Scalar Product (or dot product): For vectors $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{A}}$ and $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{B}}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} & =A_{i} B_{i}=|A||B| \cos \theta_{A B} \\
|A| & \equiv \sqrt{\vec{A} \cdot \vec{A}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Here, and going forward, the notes will follow the convention that the summation sign is inferred any time there are repeated indices. For example,

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{i} B_{i}=\sum A_{i} B_{i}=\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B} \tag{1.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

- Multiplying a matrix $C$ times a vector $\vec{A}$ :

$$
(C A)_{i}=C_{i j} A_{j}
$$

For the $i^{\text {th }}$ element one takes the scalar product of the $i^{\text {th }}$ row of $C$ with the vector $\vec{A}$.

- Mutiplying matrices $\boldsymbol{C}$ and $\boldsymbol{D}$ :

$$
(C D)_{i j}=C_{i k} D_{k j}
$$

This means the one obtains the $\boldsymbol{i} \boldsymbol{j}$ element by taking the scalar product of the $\boldsymbol{i}^{\boldsymbol{t h}}$ of $\boldsymbol{C}$ with the $\boldsymbol{j}^{\text {th }}$ column of $\boldsymbol{D}$.

- Vector Product (or cross product) of vectors $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{A}}$ and $\vec{B}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
\vec{C} & =\vec{A} \times \vec{B} \\
C_{i} & =\epsilon_{i j k} A_{j} B_{k}
\end{aligned}
$$

Here $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}$ is the third-rank anti-symmetric tensor, also known as the Levi-Civita symbol. It is $\pm 1$ only if all three indices are different, and is zero otherwise. The choice of $\pm 1$ depends on whether the indices are an even or odd permutation of the original symbols. The permutation $\boldsymbol{x y z}$ or 123 is considered to be +1 . For the 27 elements,

$$
\begin{align*}
\epsilon_{i j k} & =-\epsilon_{i k j}=-\epsilon_{j i k}=-\epsilon_{k j i}  \tag{1.21}\\
\epsilon_{123} & =\epsilon_{231}=\epsilon_{312}=1 \\
\epsilon_{213} & =\epsilon_{132}=\epsilon_{321}=-1 \\
\epsilon_{i i j} & =\epsilon_{i j i}=\epsilon_{j i i}=0
\end{align*}
$$

You used cross products extensively when studying magnetic fields. Because the matrix is anti-symmetric, switching the $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ axes (or any two axes) flips the sign. If the coordinate system is right-handed, meaning the $x y z$ axes satisfy $\hat{\boldsymbol{x}} \times \hat{\boldsymbol{y}}=\hat{\boldsymbol{z}}$, if you point along the $\boldsymbol{x}$ axis with your extended right index finger, the $\boldsymbol{y}$ axis with your contracted middle finger and the $\boldsymbol{z}$ axis with your extended thumb. Switching to a left-handed system flips the sign of the vector $\vec{C}=\vec{A} \times \vec{B}$. Note that $\vec{A} \times \vec{B}=-\vec{B} \times \vec{A}$. The vector $\vec{C}$ is perpendicular to both $\vec{A}$ and $\vec{B}$ and the magnitude of $\vec{C}$ is given by

$$
|C|=|A||B| \sin \theta_{A B}
$$

Vectors obtained by the cross product of two real vectors are called pseudo-vectors because the assignment of their direction can be arbitrarily flipped by defining the Levi-Civita symbol to be based on left-handed rules, i.e. one could choose $\epsilon_{123}=-1, \epsilon_{132}=1 \cdots$. Examples are the magnetic field and angular momentum. If the direction of a real vector prefers the right-handed over the left-handed direction, that constitutes a violation of parity. For instance, one can polarize the spins (angular momentum) of nuclei with a magnetic field so that the spins preferentially point along the direction of the magnetic field. This does not violate parity because both are pseudo-vectors. Now assume these polarized nuclei decay and that electrons are one of the products. If these electrons prefer to exit the decay parallel vs. antiparallel to the polarizing magnetic field, this constitutes parity violation because the direction of the outgoing electron momenta are a real vector. This is precisely what is observed in weak decays, as weak decays violate parity. The LeviCivita symbol has a host of interesting properties, a nice summary of which can be found at https:/ /en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Levi-Civita_symbol\#.

- Differentiation of a vector with respect to a scalar gives a vector: For example, the acceleration is $d \vec{v} / d t$ :

$$
(d \vec{v} / d t)_{i}=\frac{d v_{i}}{d t}
$$

- Angular velocity is a pseudo vector: Choose the vector $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ so that the motion is like your fingers wrapping around your thumb on your right hand with $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ pointing along your thumb. The magnitude is $d|\phi| / d t$.
- Gradient operator $\nabla$ is a vector: This is the derivative $\partial / \partial x, \partial / \partial y$ and $\partial / \partial z$, where $\partial_{x}$ means $\partial / \partial_{\boldsymbol{x}}$. For taking the gradient of a scalar $\boldsymbol{\Phi}$,

$$
\operatorname{grad} \Phi:(\nabla \Phi(x, y, z, t))_{i}=\partial / \partial r_{i} \Phi(\vec{r}, t)=\partial_{i} \Phi(\vec{r}, t)
$$

For taking the dot product of the gradient with a vector, sometimes called a divergence,

$$
\operatorname{div} \vec{A}: \nabla \cdot \vec{A}=\partial_{i} A_{i}
$$

For taking the vector product with another vector, sometimes called curl, $\nabla \times \vec{A}$,

$$
\operatorname{curl} \vec{A}:(\nabla \times \vec{A})_{i}=\epsilon_{i j k} \partial_{j} A_{k}(\vec{r}, t)
$$

- The Laplacian is referred to as $\boldsymbol{\nabla}^{2}$ is a scalar and is defined as

$$
\nabla^{2}=\nabla \cdot \nabla=\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial x^{2}}+\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial y^{2}}+\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial z^{2}}
$$

It should be emphasized that one NEVER adds two physical quantities with different number of components. For example, one never adds time plus the $\boldsymbol{x}$-component of the distance. However, once indices are summed over, those indices disappear and the resulting quantity transforms like an object with the remaining indices. For example, angular momentum can be expressed as $\boldsymbol{L}_{i} \epsilon_{i j k} \boldsymbol{r}_{j} \boldsymbol{p}_{\boldsymbol{k}}$, where sums over $\boldsymbol{j}$ and $\boldsymbol{k}$ are inferred. Thus, angular momentum transforms under rotation like any other vector. An example of an invalid equation is

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\vec{v}|^{2} t^{2}=x y \tag{1.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Dimensionally, this is fine, but the l.h.s. transforms as a scalar an the r.h.s. transforms as part of a second-rank tensor. If the opposite sides of an equation transformed differently under a rotation, that would infer that the equation's validity would rest on the coordinate system chosen by the observer.

## Some Identities

Here we simply state these, but you may wish to prove a few. They are useful for this class and will be essential when you study E\&M.

$$
\begin{align*}
\vec{A} \cdot(\vec{B} \times \vec{C}) & =\vec{B} \cdot(\vec{C} \times \vec{A})=\vec{C} \cdot(\vec{A} \times \vec{B})  \tag{1.23}\\
\vec{A} \times(\vec{B} \times \vec{C}) & =(\vec{A} \cdot \vec{C}) \vec{B}-(\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B}) \vec{C} \\
(\vec{A} \times \vec{B}) \cdot(\vec{C} \times \vec{D}) & =(\vec{A} \cdot \vec{C})(\vec{B} \cdot \vec{D})-(\vec{A} \cdot \vec{D})(\vec{B} \cdot \vec{C})
\end{align*}
$$

## Example 1.2: Minima or Maxima in Higher Dimensions

The height of a hill is given by the formula

$$
z(x, y)=2 x y-3 x^{2}-4 y^{2}-18 x+28 y+12
$$

Here $\boldsymbol{z}$ is the height in meters and $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ are the east-west and north-south coordinates. Find the position $x, y$ where the hill is the highest, and give its height.
Solution: The maxima or minima, or inflection points, are given when $\partial_{x} z=0$ and $\partial_{y} z=0$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \partial_{x} z(x, y)=2 y-6 x-18=0 \\
& \partial_{y} z(x, y)=2 x-8 y+28=0
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving for two equations and two unknowns gives one solution $x=-2, y=3$. This then gives $z=72$. Although this procedure could have given a minimum or an inflection point you can look at the form for $\boldsymbol{z}$ and see that for $\boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{y}=\mathbf{0}$ the height is lower, therefore it is not a minimum. You can also look and see that the quadratic contributions are negative so the height falls off to $-\infty$ far away in any direction. Thus, there must be a maximum, and this must be it. Deciding between maximum or minimum or inflection point for a general problem would involve looking at the matrix $\partial_{i} \partial_{j} z$ at the specific point, then finding the eigenvalues of the matrix and seeing whether they were both positive (minimum) both negative (maximum) or one positive and one negative (saddle point).

## Gauss's Theorem and Stokes's Theorem

For an integral over a volume $\boldsymbol{V}$ confined by a surface $\boldsymbol{S}$, Gauss's theorem gives

$$
\int_{V} d v \nabla \cdot \vec{A}=\int_{S} d \vec{S} \cdot \vec{A}
$$

For a closed path $C$ which carves out some area $S$,

$$
\int_{C} d \vec{\ell} \cdot \vec{A}=\int_{S} d \vec{s} \cdot(\nabla \times \vec{A})
$$

Stoke's law can be understood by considering a small rectangle, $-\Delta x<x<\Delta x,-\Delta y<$ $\boldsymbol{y}<\boldsymbol{\Delta} \boldsymbol{y}$. The path integral around the edges is

$$
\begin{align*}
\int_{C} d \vec{\ell} \cdot \vec{A} & =2 \Delta y\left[A_{y}(\Delta x, 0)-A_{y}(-\Delta x, 0)\right]-2 \Delta x\left[A_{x}(0, \Delta y)-A_{x}(0,-\Delta y)\right](1)  \tag{1.24}\\
& =4 \Delta x \Delta y\left\{\frac{A_{y}(\Delta x, 0)-A_{y}(-\Delta x, 0)}{2 \Delta x}-\frac{A_{x}(0, \Delta y)-A_{x}(0,-\Delta y)}{2 \Delta y}\right\} \\
& =4 \Delta x \Delta y\left\{\frac{\partial A_{y}}{\partial x}-\frac{\partial A_{x}}{\partial y}\right\} \\
& =\Delta S \cdot \nabla \times \vec{A} \tag{1.25}
\end{align*}
$$

Here $\boldsymbol{\Delta} \boldsymbol{S}$ is the area of the surface element.

## Some Notation

From here on in, we may use bold face to denote vectors, e.g. v instead of $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}$. We also might use dots over quantities to represent time derivatives, e.g. $\dot{\mathbf{v}}=\boldsymbol{d v} / \boldsymbol{d t}$. As mentioned above,
repeated indices infer sums, e.g.,

$$
\begin{align*}
u_{i} v_{i} & =\sum_{i} u_{i} v_{i}=\vec{u} \cdot \vec{v}  \tag{1.26}\\
u_{i} A_{i j} v_{j} & =\sum_{i j} u_{i} A_{i j} v_{j}
\end{align*}
$$

Absolute values of vectors are short hand for

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\vec{A}|=\sqrt{A_{i}^{2}} \tag{1.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 1.3 Exercises

1. All physicists must become comfortable with thinking of oscillatory and wave mechanics in terms of expressions that include the form $e^{i \omega t}$.
(a) Perform Taylor expansions in powers of $\omega t$ of the functions $\cos \omega t$ and $\sin \omega t$.
(b) Perform a Taylor expansion of $e^{i \omega t}$.
(c) Using parts (a) and (b) show that $e^{i \omega t}=\cos \omega t+i \sin \omega t$.
(d) Show that $\ln (-1)=i \pi$.
2. One of the many uses of the scalar product is to find the angle between two given vectors. Find the angle between the vectors $\vec{b}=(1,2,4)$ and $\vec{c}=(4,2,1)$ by evaluating their scalar product.
3. Use the product rule to show that

$$
\frac{d}{d t}(\vec{r} \cdot \vec{s})=\frac{d \vec{r}}{d t} \cdot \vec{s}+\vec{r} \cdot \frac{d \vec{s}}{d t}
$$

4. Multiply the rotation matrix in Example 1.1 by its transpose to show that the matrix is unitary or orthogonal, i.e. you get the unit matrix.
5. Find the matrix for rotating a coordinate system by 90 degrees about the $\boldsymbol{x}$ axis.
6. Consider a parity transformation which reflects about the $\boldsymbol{x}=0$ plane. Find the matrix that performs the transformation. Find the matrix that performs the inverse transformation.
7. Show that the scalar product of two vectors is unchanged if both undergo the same rotation. Use the fact that the rotation matrix is unitary, $\boldsymbol{U}_{a b}=\boldsymbol{U}_{b a}^{-1}$.
8. Show that the product of two unitary matrices is a unitary matrix.
9. Show that

$$
\sum_{k} \epsilon_{i j k} \epsilon_{k l m}=\delta_{i l} \delta_{j m}-\delta_{i m} \delta_{j l}
$$

10. Consider the function $z=3 x^{2}-4 y^{2}+12 x y-6 x+24$. Find any maxima or minima and determine whether it is a maximum or a minimum or an inflection point.
11. Consider a cubic volume $\boldsymbol{V}=\boldsymbol{L}^{\mathbf{3}}$ defined by $\mathbf{0}<\boldsymbol{x}<\boldsymbol{L}, \mathbf{0}<\boldsymbol{y}<\boldsymbol{L}$ and $\mathbf{0}<\boldsymbol{z}<\boldsymbol{L}$. Consider a vector $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{A}}$ that depends arbitrarily on $\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{z}$. Show how Gauss's law,

$$
\int_{V} d v \nabla \cdot \vec{A}=\int_{S} d \vec{S} \cdot \vec{A}
$$

is satisfied by direct integration. I.e., you should use the fact that $\int_{a}^{b} d x(d / d x) f(x)=$ $f(b)-f(a)$.
12. A real $\boldsymbol{n}$-dimensional symmetric matrix $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ can always be diagonalized by a unitary transformation, i.e. there exists some unitary matrix $\boldsymbol{U}$ such that,

$$
U_{i j} \lambda_{j k} U_{k m}^{-1}=\tilde{\lambda}_{i m}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\tilde{\lambda}_{11} & 0 & \cdots & 0  \tag{1.28}\\
0 & \tilde{\lambda}_{22} & \cdots & 0 \\
\vdots & & \ddots & \vdots \\
0 & \cdots & \cdots & \tilde{\lambda}_{n n}
\end{array}\right)
$$

The values $\tilde{\lambda}_{i i}$ are referred to as eigenvalues. The set of $\boldsymbol{n}$ eigenvalues are unique, but their ordering is not - there exists a unitary transformation that permutes the indices.
Consider a function $f\left(x_{1}, \cdots, x_{n}\right)$ that has the property,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\partial_{i} f(\vec{x})\right|_{\vec{x}=0}=0 \tag{1.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $i$. Show that if this function is a minimum, and not a maximum or an inflection point, that the $n$ eigenvalues of the matrix

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left.\lambda_{i j} \equiv \partial_{i} \partial_{j} f(\vec{x})\right|_{\vec{x}=0} \tag{1.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

must be positive.
13. (a) For the unitary matrix $\boldsymbol{U}$ that diagonalizes $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ as shown in the previous problem. Show that each row of the unitary matrix represents an orthogonal unit vector by using the definition of a unitary matrix.
(b) Show that the vector

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{i}^{(k)} \equiv U_{k i}=\left(U_{k 1}, U_{k 2}, \cdots, U_{k n}\right) \tag{1.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

has the property that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{i j} x_{j}^{(k)}=\tilde{\lambda}_{k k} x_{i}^{(k)} \tag{1.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

These vectors are known as eigenvectors, as they have the property that when multiplied by $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ the resulting vector is proportional ( same direction) as the original vector. Because one can transform to a basis, using $\boldsymbol{U}$, where $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ is diagonalized, in the new basis the eigenvectors are simply the unit vectors.
14. Which of these equations might be valid? Base your response solely on whether whether both sides of the equation are consistent dimensionally (center column) or rotationally (right-hand column). Here, $\boldsymbol{F}, \boldsymbol{q}, \boldsymbol{v}, \boldsymbol{B}, \boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{r}, \boldsymbol{t}, \boldsymbol{p}, \boldsymbol{E}, \boldsymbol{a}$ refer to force, charge, velocity, magnetic field, angular momentum, position, time, momentum and energy, respectively.

| expression | dimensionally | rotationally |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\boldsymbol{F}_{i}=\boldsymbol{q} \epsilon_{i j k} \boldsymbol{v}_{j} \boldsymbol{B}_{k}$ (same as $\left.\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}=\boldsymbol{q} \vec{v} \times \vec{B}\right)$ |  |  |
| $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}=\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}} \cdot \overrightarrow{\mathbf{L}} / \boldsymbol{r}^{2}$ |  |  |
| $\boldsymbol{r}_{\boldsymbol{i}}=\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{i}} \boldsymbol{t}+\frac{t^{2}}{2} \epsilon_{i j k} a_{k}$ |  |  |
| $\boldsymbol{E}=\vec{r} \cdot(\vec{p} \times \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{R}})$ |  |  |

## 2 Newton's Laws

In this chapter we mainly consider the motion of a single particle moving under the influence of some set of forces. For Sec.s 2.1-2.3 we consider problems where the force does not depend on the position. In that case Newton's law, $\boldsymbol{m} \dot{\vec{v}}=\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}(\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}})$, is a first-order differential equation and one solves for $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}(\boldsymbol{t})$, then moves on to integrate $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}$ to get the position. In section 2.4 we consider the case where the force depends on the position and we show how to use energy conservation to derive trajectories, e.g. $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$, though as shown in Sec. 2.5 , this may require a numerical solution. The role of momentum conservation in solving certain classes of problems is presented in Sec. 2.7 and the role of angular momentum is shown in Sec. 2.8.

### 2.1 Air Resistance in One Dimension

The force on a projectile due to air resistance scales mainly as the square of the velocity. This is in contrast to many problems chosen for textbooks, where it is linear in the velocity. The choice of a linear dependence is motivated by mathematical simplicity (it keeps the differential equation linear) rather than by physics. One can see that the force should be quadratic in velocity by considering the momentum imparted on the air molecules. If an object sweeps through a volume $d \boldsymbol{V}$ of air in time $\boldsymbol{d t}$, the momentum imparted on the air is

$$
\begin{equation*}
d P=\rho_{m} d V v \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $v$ is the velocity of the object and $\rho_{m}$ is the mass density of the air. If the molecules bounce back as opposed to simply move with the velocity of the object you would double the size of the term. The opposite value of the momentum is imparted onto the object itself. Geometrically, the differential volume is

$$
\begin{equation*}
d V=A v d t \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{A}$ is the cross-sectional area and $\boldsymbol{v} \boldsymbol{d} t$ is the distance the object moved in time $\boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{t}$. Plugging this into the expression above,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d P}{d t}=-\rho_{m} A v^{2} \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is the force felt by the particle, and is opposite to its direction of motion. Now, because air doesn't stop when it hits an object, but flows around the best it can, the actual force is reduced by a dimensionless factor $\boldsymbol{c}_{\boldsymbol{D}}$, called the drag coefficient.

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{\mathrm{drag}}=-c_{D} \rho_{m} A v^{2} \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the acceleration is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d v}{d t}=-\frac{c_{D} \rho_{m} A}{m} v^{2} \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

For a particle with initial velocity $\boldsymbol{v}_{\mathbf{0}}$, one can separate the $\boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{t}$ to one side of the equation, and move everything with $v$ s to the other side of Eq. (2.5), then integrate,

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d v}{v^{2}} & =-B d t, B \equiv \frac{c_{D} \rho_{m} A}{m}  \tag{2.6}\\
\int_{v_{0}}^{v_{f}} \frac{d v}{v^{2}} & =-B \int_{t_{0}}^{t_{f}} d t=-B t_{f} \\
\left(\frac{1}{v_{0}}-\frac{1}{v_{f}}\right) & =-B\left(t_{f}-t_{0}\right) \\
v & =\left[1 / v_{0}+B\left(t-t_{0}\right)\right]^{-1}
\end{align*}
$$

We dropped the subscript $f$, i.e. $\boldsymbol{t}_{f} \rightarrow \boldsymbol{t}$ and $\boldsymbol{v}_{f}=\boldsymbol{v}$. One can see that $\boldsymbol{v}\left(\boldsymbol{t}=\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{0}}\right)=\boldsymbol{v}_{0}$, and that $\boldsymbol{v}(t=\infty)=0$, as expected because the drag force should ultimately stop an object unless there is an additional force such as gravity.

## Example 2.1: Dropped Ball

Consider a ball dropped from rest. Let $B=c_{D} \rho_{m} A / m$ represent the effect of the drag force as above.

1. Solve for the terminal velocity Solution: This is where the acceleration is zero. The equations of motion are

$$
\frac{d v}{d t}=-g+B v^{2}
$$

with the initial velocity set to zero. Because the motion is downward, the drag force is positive. The terminal velocity is that for which the acceleration is zero,

$$
v_{t}=\sqrt{g / B}
$$

2. Find the velocity as a function of time. Solution: Integrate as above,

$$
\begin{aligned}
-B d t & =\frac{d v}{(g / B)-v^{2}} \\
-B t & =\frac{1}{v_{t}} \int_{0}^{v / v_{t}} d x \frac{1}{1-x^{2}}=\frac{1}{v_{t}} \tanh ^{-1}\left(v / v_{t}\right) \\
v & =-v_{t} \tanh \left(B v_{t} t\right)=-v_{t} \tanh \left(g t / v_{t}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

For small arguments $\tanh (x) \approx x$ and for large $\operatorname{arguments}, \tanh (x) \approx 1$,

$$
v(t \rightarrow 0)=-g t, \quad v(t \rightarrow \infty)=v_{t}
$$

as expected. In addition to dimensional analysis, such tests provide useful checks for answers.

For many systems, e.g. an automobile, there are multiple sources of resistance. In addition to wind resistance, where the force is proportional to $\boldsymbol{v}^{2}$, there are dissipative effects of the tires on the pavement, and in the axel and drive train. These other forces can have components that scale
proportional to $\boldsymbol{v}$, and components that are independent of $\boldsymbol{v}$. Those independent of $\boldsymbol{v}$, e.g. the usual $f=\mu_{K} N$ frictional force you consider in Physics I, only set in once the object is actually moving. As speeds become higher, the $\boldsymbol{v}^{2}$ components begin to dominate relative to the others. For automobiles at freeway speeds, the $\boldsymbol{v}^{2}$ terms are largely responsible for the loss of efficiency. To travel a distance $L$ at fixed speed $\boldsymbol{v}$, the energy/work required to overcome the dissipative forces are $\boldsymbol{f} \boldsymbol{L}$, which for a force of the form $f=\boldsymbol{\alpha} \boldsymbol{v}^{n}$ becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
W=\int d x f=\alpha v^{n} L \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $\boldsymbol{n}=0$ the work is independent of speed, but for the wind resistance, where $\boldsymbol{n}=2$, slowing down is essential if one wishes to reduce fuel consumption. It is also important to consider that engines are designed to be most efficient at a chosen range of power output. Thus, some cars will get better mileage at higher speeds (They perform better at 50 mph than at 5 mph ) despite the considerations mentioned above.
The discussion above considered the work, or energy expended, for travling a specific distance. If one were to consider the power, which would the work per time, the dependence on $\boldsymbol{v}$, would strengthen. Dividing the work by the time traveled gives the expression for the power, $\boldsymbol{P}=\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}} \cdot \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}$, which would scale as $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \boldsymbol{v}^{n+1}$. Thus, if one considered only wind resistance, with the force rising proportional to $\boldsymbol{v}^{2}$, a bicyclist would require expend four times the energy to traverse a given distance if she doubled her speed, but would require eight times the power.

### 2.2 Projectile Motion

As an example of Newton's Laws we consider projectile motion with a drag force. Even though air resistance is largely proportional to the square of the velocity, we will consider the drag force to be linear to the velocity, $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}=-\boldsymbol{m} \gamma \boldsymbol{v}$, for the purposes of this exercise. The acceleration, $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{a}}=\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}} / \boldsymbol{m}$, becomes

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{d v_{x}}{d t}=-\gamma v_{x}  \tag{2.8}\\
\frac{d v_{y}}{d t}=-\gamma v_{y}-g
\end{gather*}
$$

and $\gamma$ has dimensions of inverse time.
We will go over two different ways to solve this equation: first by direct integration, and secondly as a differential equation. To solve the equations by direct integration, one simply multiplies both sides of the equations above by $\boldsymbol{d t}$, then divide by the appropriate factors so that the $v$ s are all on one side of the equation and the $d t$ is on the other. For the $\boldsymbol{x}$ motion one finds an
easily integrable equation,

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d v_{x}}{v_{x}} & =-\gamma d t  \tag{2.9}\\
\int_{v_{0 x}}^{v_{f x}} \frac{d v_{x}}{v_{x}} & =-\gamma \int_{0}^{t_{f}} d t \\
\ln \left(\frac{v_{f x}}{v_{0 x}}\right) & =-\gamma t_{f} \\
v_{f x} & =v_{0 x} e^{-\gamma t}
\end{align*}
$$

Here, we leave the subscript off the final time in the last expression. This is very much the result you would have written down by inspection. For the $y$-component of the velocity,

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d v_{y}}{v_{y}+g / \gamma} & =-\gamma d t  \tag{2.10}\\
\ln \left(\frac{v_{f y}+g / \gamma}{v_{0 y}+g / \gamma}\right) & =-\gamma t_{f} \\
v_{f y} & =-\frac{g}{\gamma}+\left(v_{0 y}+\frac{g}{\gamma}\right) e^{-\gamma t}
\end{align*}
$$

The reason the drag force was chosen proportional to $v$, was not to be realistic, but to make it simple to consider the $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ components separately. Whereas $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$ starts at some value and decays exponentially to zero, $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{y}}$ decays exponentially to the terminal velocity, $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{t}}=-\boldsymbol{g} / \boldsymbol{\gamma}$.
Although this direct integration is simpler than the method we invoke below, the method below will come in useful for some slightly more difficult differential equations in the future. The differential equation for $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$ in Eq. (2.8) is straight-forward to solve. Because it is first order there is one arbitrary constant, $\boldsymbol{A}$, and by inspection the solution is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{x}}=\boldsymbol{A} \boldsymbol{e}^{-\gamma t} \tag{2.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

The arbitrary constants for equations of motion are usually determined by the initial conditions, or more generally, by boundary conditions. By inspection $\boldsymbol{A}=\boldsymbol{v}_{0 x}$, the initial $\boldsymbol{x}$ component of the velocity.
The differential equation for $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{y}}$ is a bit more complicated due to the presence of $\boldsymbol{g}$. Differential equations where all the terms are linearly proportional to a function, in this case $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{y}}$, or to derivatives of the function, e.g., $v_{y}, d v_{y} / d t, d^{2} v_{y} / d t^{2} \cdots$, are called linear differential equations. If there are terms proportional to $\boldsymbol{v}^{2}$, as would happen if the drag force were proportional to the square of the velocity, the differential equation is not longer linear. Because this expression has only one derivative in $v$ it is a first-order linear differential equation. If a term were added proportional to $d^{2} \boldsymbol{v} / \boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{t}^{2}$ it would be a second-order differential equation. In this case we have a term completely independent of $\boldsymbol{v}$, the gravitational acceleration $\boldsymbol{g}$, and the usual strategy is to first rewrite the equation with all the linear terms on one side of the equal sign,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d v_{y}}{d t}+\gamma v_{y}=-g \tag{2.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, the solution to the equation can be broken into two parts. Because this is a first-order differential equation we know that there will be one arbitrary constant. Physically, the arbitrary constant will be determined by setting the initial velocity, though it could be determined by setting the velocity at any given time. Like most differential equations, solutions are not "solved". Instead, one guesses at a form, then shows the guess is correct. For these types of equations, one first tries to find a single solution, i.e. one with no arbitrary constants. This is called the particular solution, $\boldsymbol{y}_{\boldsymbol{p}}(\boldsymbol{t})$, though it should really be called "a" particular solution because there are an infinite number of such solutions. One then finds a solution to the homogenous equation, which is the equation with zero on the right-hand side,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d v_{y, h}}{d t}+\gamma v_{y, h}=0 \tag{2.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Homogenous solutions will have arbitrary constants.
The particular solution will solve the same equation as the original general equation, Eq. (2.12),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d v_{y, p}}{d t}+\gamma v_{y, p}=-g \tag{2.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

However, we needn't find one with arbitrary constants. Hence, it is called a "particular" solution.
The sum of the two,

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{y}=v_{y, p}+v_{y, h} \tag{2.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a solution of the total equation because of the linear nature of the differential equation. One has now found a general solution encompassing all solutions, because it both satisfies the general equation (like the particular solution), and has an arbitrary constant that can be adjusted to fit any initial condition (like the homogneous solution). If the equation were not linear, e.g if there were a term such as $\boldsymbol{v}_{y}^{2}$ or $\boldsymbol{v}_{y} \dot{v}_{y}$, this technique would not work.
Returning to the example above, the homogenous solution is the same as that for $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{x}}$, because there was no gravitational acceleration in that case,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{v}_{y, h}=B e^{-\gamma t} \tag{2.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this case a particular solution is one with constant velocity,

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{y, p}=-g / \gamma \tag{2.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that this is the terminal velocity of a particle falling from a great height. The general solution is thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{y}=B e^{-\gamma t}-g / \gamma \tag{2.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

and one can find $\boldsymbol{B}$ from the initial velocity,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{v}_{0 y}=\boldsymbol{B}-\boldsymbol{g} / \gamma, \quad \boldsymbol{B}=\boldsymbol{v}_{0 y}+\boldsymbol{g} / \gamma \tag{2.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Plugging in the expression for $\boldsymbol{B}$ into Eq. (2.18) gives the $\boldsymbol{y}$ motion given the initial velocity,

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{y}=\left(v_{0 y}+g / \gamma\right) e^{-\gamma t}-g / \gamma \tag{2.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is easy to see that this solution has $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{y}}=\boldsymbol{v}_{0 y}$ when $\boldsymbol{t}=\mathbf{0}$ and $\boldsymbol{v}_{y}=-\boldsymbol{g} / \gamma$ when $\boldsymbol{t} \rightarrow \infty$.
One can also integrate the two equations to find the coordinates $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ as functions of $\boldsymbol{t}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
x & =\int_{0}^{t} d t^{\prime} v_{x}\left(t^{\prime}\right)=\frac{v_{0 x}}{\gamma}\left(1-e^{-\gamma t}\right)  \tag{2.21}\\
y & =\int_{0}^{t} d t^{\prime} v_{y}\left(t^{\prime}\right)=-\frac{g t}{\gamma}+\frac{v_{0 y}+g / \gamma}{\gamma}\left(1-e^{-\gamma t}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

If the question was to find the position at a time $t$, we would be finished. However, the more common goal in a projectile equation problem is to find the range, i.e. the distance $\boldsymbol{x}$ at which $\boldsymbol{y}$ returns to zero. For the case without a drag force this was much simpler. The solution for the $y$ coordinate would have been $y=v_{0 y} t-g t^{2} / 2$. One would solve for $t$ to make $y=0$, which would be $t=2 v_{0 y} / g$, then plug that value for $t$ into $x=v_{0 x} t$ to find $x=2 v_{0 x} v_{0 y} / g=$ $v_{0} \sin \left(2 \theta_{0}\right) / g$. One follows the same steps here, except that the expression for $\boldsymbol{y}(t)$ is more complicated. Searching for the time where $\boldsymbol{y}=0$, Eq. (2.21) gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
0=-\frac{g t}{\gamma}+\frac{v_{0 y}+g / \gamma}{\gamma}\left(1-e^{-\gamma t}\right) \tag{2.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

This cannot be inverted into a simple expression $t=\cdots$. Such expressions are known as "transcendental equations", and are not the rare instance, but are the norm. In the days before computers, one might plot the right-hand side of Eq. (2.22) graphically as a function of time, then find the point where it crosses zero.
Now, the most common way to solve for an equation of type Eq. (2.22) would be to apply Newton's method numerically. This involves the following algorithm for finding solutions of some equation $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t})=0$, where $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t})$ is some function of $t$, not necessarily the force.

1. First guess a value for the time, $\boldsymbol{t}_{\text {guess }}$.
2. Calculate $\boldsymbol{F}$ and its derivative, $\boldsymbol{F}\left(\boldsymbol{t}_{\text {guess }}\right)$ and $\boldsymbol{F}^{\prime}\left(\boldsymbol{t}_{\text {guess }}\right)$.
3. Unless you guessed perfectly, $F \neq 0$, and assuming that $\Delta F \approx F^{\prime} \Delta t$, one would choose
4. $\Delta t=-F\left(t_{\text {guess }}\right) / F^{\prime}\left(t_{\text {guess }}\right)$.
5. Now repeat step 1 , but with $t_{\text {guess }} \rightarrow t_{\text {guess }}+\Delta t$.

If the $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t})$ were perfectly linear in $\boldsymbol{t}$, one would find $\boldsymbol{t}$ in one step. Instead, one typically finds a value of $\boldsymbol{t}$ that is closer to the final answer than $\boldsymbol{t}_{\text {guess }}$. One breaks the loop once one finds $\boldsymbol{F}$ within some acceptable tolerance of zero. A program to do this might look like:

```
#include <cstdlib>
#include <cstdio>
void CalcF(double t,double &F,double &Fprime);
using namespace std;
int main(){
```

```
    int ntries=0;
    double tguess,tolerance=1.0E-8,F,Fprime,delt;
    printf("Enter tguess: ");
    scanf("%lf",&tguess);
    CalcF(tguess,F,Fprime);
    do{
        delt=-F/Fprime;
        if(fabs(delt)>0.5*fabs(tguess))
            delt=0.5*tguess*delt/fabs(delt);
        tguess=tguess+delt;
        CalcF(tguess,F,Fprime);
        ntries+=1;
    }while(fabs(F)>tolerance && ntries<20);
    if(ntries<20)
        printf("Solution: t=%g\n",tguess);
    else
        printf("Failed to converge after 20 tries\n");
    return 0;
}
```


## IN CLASS EXERCISE

Write a program that solves for the range of a particle's motion given its initial velocity $\boldsymbol{v}_{0}$, initial direction $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{0}$ (in degrees) and a damping factor $\gamma$. Have the program prompt you to enter these three inputs. The program should use Newton's method to find the time at which $\boldsymbol{y}=0$. As a first guess for the time, you might try $\boldsymbol{t}_{\text {guess }}=2 \boldsymbol{v}_{0 y} / \boldsymbol{g}$. In this case Newton's method would need the function $\boldsymbol{F}$ to be replaced by $\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{t})$ given in Eq. (2.20) and $\boldsymbol{F}^{\prime}$ would be $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{y}}$.

### 2.3 Motion in a Magnetic Field

Another example of a velocity-dependent force is magnetism,

$$
\begin{align*}
\vec{F} & =q \vec{v} \times \vec{B}  \tag{2.23}\\
F_{i} & =q \sum_{j k} \epsilon_{i j k} v_{j} B_{k}
\end{align*}
$$

For a uniform field in the $\boldsymbol{z}$ direction $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{B}}=\boldsymbol{B} \hat{\boldsymbol{z}}$, the force can only have $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ components,

$$
\begin{align*}
& \boldsymbol{F}_{x}=\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{B} v_{y}  \tag{2.24}\\
& \boldsymbol{F}_{y}=-\boldsymbol{B} \boldsymbol{v}_{x} .
\end{align*}
$$

The $\boldsymbol{z}$ motion is trivial, $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{z}}=$ constant. The differential equations for the $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ motion are

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{v}_{x} & =\omega_{c} \boldsymbol{v}_{y}  \tag{2.25}\\
\dot{v}_{y} & =-\omega_{c} v_{x} \\
\omega_{c} & \equiv q B / m \tag{2.26}
\end{align*}
$$

One can solve the equations by taking time derivatives of either equation, then substituting into the other equation,

$$
\begin{align*}
& \ddot{v}_{x}=\omega_{c} \dot{v}_{y}=-\omega_{c}^{2} \boldsymbol{v}_{x}  \tag{2.27}\\
& \ddot{\boldsymbol{v}}_{y}=-\omega_{c} \dot{v}_{x}=-\omega_{c} \boldsymbol{v}_{y}
\end{align*}
$$

The solution to these equations can be seen by inspection,

$$
\begin{align*}
& v_{x}=A \sin \left(\omega_{c} t+\phi\right)  \tag{2.28}\\
& v_{y}=A \cos \left(\omega_{c} t+\phi\right)
\end{align*}
$$

One can integrate the equations to find the positions as a function of time,

$$
\begin{align*}
x-x_{0} & =\int_{x_{0}}^{x} d x=\int_{0}^{t} d t v_{x}(t)  \tag{2.29}\\
& =\frac{-A}{\omega_{c}} \cos \left(\omega_{c} t+\phi\right) \\
y-y_{0} & =\frac{A}{\omega_{c}} \sin \left(\omega_{c} t+\phi\right)
\end{align*}
$$

The trajectory is a circle centered at $\boldsymbol{x}_{0}, \boldsymbol{y}_{0}$ with amplitude $\boldsymbol{A}$ rotating in the clockwise direction. The equations of motion for the $z$ motion are

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{v}_{z}=0 \tag{2.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

which leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
z-z_{0}=V_{z} t \tag{2.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

Added onto the circular motion in the $\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}$ plane, the three-dimensional motion is helical.
Note that the kinetic energy,

$$
\begin{equation*}
T=\frac{1}{2} m\left(v_{x}^{2}+v_{y}^{2}+v_{z}^{2}\right)=\frac{1}{2} m\left(\omega_{c}^{2} A^{2}+V_{z}^{2}\right) \tag{2.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

is constant. This is because the force is perpendicular to the velocity, so that in any differential time element $d \boldsymbol{t}$ the work done on the particle $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}} \cdot \boldsymbol{d r}=\boldsymbol{d t} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}} \cdot \boldsymbol{v}=\mathbf{0}$.
One should think about the implications of a velocity dependent force. Suppose one had a constant magnetic field in deep space. If a particle came through with velocity $v_{0}$, it would undergo cyclotron motion with radius $R=v_{0} / \omega_{c}$. However, if it were still its motion would remain fixed. Now, suppose an observer looked at the particle in one reference frame where the particle was moving, then changed their velocity so that the particle's velocity appeared to be zero. The motion would change from circular to fixed. Is this possible?
The solution to the paradox above relies on understanding relativity. Imagine that the first observer believes $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{B}} \neq \mathbf{0}$ and that the electric field $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{E}}=\mathbf{0}$. If the observer then changes reference frames by accelerating to a velocity $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}$, in the new frame $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{B}}$ and $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{E}}$ both change. If the observer moved to the frame where the charge, originally moving with a small velocity $\boldsymbol{v}$, is now at rest, the new electric field is indeed $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}} \times \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{B}}$, which then leads to the same acceleration as one had before. If the velocity is not small compared to the speed of light, additional $\gamma$ factors come into play, $\gamma=1 / \sqrt{1-(v / c)^{2}}$. Relativistic motion will not be considered in this course.

### 2.4 Conservation of Energy

Energy conservation is most convenient as a strategy for addressing problems where time does not appear. For example, "a particle goes from position $\boldsymbol{x}_{0}$ with speed $\boldsymbol{v}_{0}$, to position $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{f}}$ - what is its new speed?" However, it can also be applied to problems where time does appear, such as in solving for the trajectory $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$, or equivalently $\boldsymbol{t}(\boldsymbol{x})$. This is the focus of this sub-section.
Energy is conserved in the case where the potential energy, $\boldsymbol{U}(\vec{r})$, depends only on position, and not on time. The force is determined by $\boldsymbol{U}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{F}(\vec{r})=-\nabla U(\vec{r}) \tag{2.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

The net energy, $\boldsymbol{E}=\boldsymbol{U}+\boldsymbol{T}$ where $\boldsymbol{T}$ is the kinetic energy, is then conserved,

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d}{d t}(T+U) & =\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{m}{2}\left(v_{x}^{2}+v_{y}^{2}+v_{z}^{2}\right)+U(\vec{r})\right)  \tag{2.34}\\
& =m\left(v_{x} \frac{d v_{x}}{d t}+v_{y} \frac{d v_{y}}{d t}+v_{z} \frac{d v_{z}}{d t}\right)+\partial_{x} U \frac{d x}{d t}+\partial_{y} U \frac{d y}{d t}+\partial_{z} U \frac{d z}{d t} \\
& =v_{x} F_{x}+v_{y} F_{y}+v_{z} F_{z}-F_{x} v_{x}-F_{y} v_{y}-F_{z} v_{z}=0
\end{align*}
$$

The same proof can be written more compactly with vector notation,

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{m}{2} v^{2}+U(\vec{r})\right) & =m \vec{v} \cdot \dot{\vec{v}}+\nabla U(\vec{r}) \cdot \dot{\vec{r}}  \tag{2.35}\\
& =\vec{v} \cdot \vec{F}-\vec{F} \cdot \vec{v}=0
\end{align*}
$$

Inverting the expression for kinetic energy,

$$
\begin{equation*}
v=\sqrt{2 T / m}=\sqrt{2(E-U) / m} \tag{2.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

allows one to solve for the one-dimensional trajectory $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$, by finding $t(x)$,

$$
\begin{align*}
d t & =\frac{d x}{v}  \tag{2.37}\\
t & =\int_{x_{0}}^{x} \frac{d x^{\prime}}{v\left(x^{\prime}\right)}=\int_{x_{0}}^{x} \frac{d x^{\prime}}{\sqrt{2\left(E-U\left(x^{\prime}\right)\right) / m}} \tag{2.38}
\end{align*}
$$

where $x_{0}$ is the position at $t=0$. Note this would be much more difficult in higher dimensions, because you would have to determine which points, $\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{z}$, the particles might reach in the trajectory, whereas in one dimension you can typically tell by simply seeing whether the kinetic energy is positive at every point between the old position and the new position.

## Example 2.2: Trajectory in Harmonic Oscillator

Consider a simple harmonic oscillator potential, $\boldsymbol{U}(\boldsymbol{x})=\boldsymbol{k} \boldsymbol{x}^{2} / 2$, with a particle emitted from
$\boldsymbol{x}=\mathbf{0}$ with velocity $\boldsymbol{v}_{\mathbf{0}}$. Solve for the trajectory $\boldsymbol{t}(\boldsymbol{x})$,

$$
\begin{align*}
t & =\int_{0}^{x} \frac{d x^{\prime}}{\sqrt{2\left(E-k x^{2} / 2\right) / m}}  \tag{2.39}\\
& =\sqrt{m / k} \int_{0}^{x} \frac{d x^{\prime}}{\sqrt{x_{\max }^{2}-x^{\prime 2}}}, \quad x_{\max }^{2}=2 E / k
\end{align*}
$$

Here $\boldsymbol{E}=\boldsymbol{m} \boldsymbol{v}_{\mathbf{0}}^{2} / \mathbf{2}$ and $\boldsymbol{x}_{\text {max }}$ is defined as the maximum displacement before the particle turns around. This integral is done by the substitution $\sin \theta=\boldsymbol{x} / \boldsymbol{x}_{\text {max }}$.

$$
\begin{align*}
(k / m)^{1 / 2} t & =\sin ^{-1}\left(x / x_{\max }\right)  \tag{2.40}\\
x & =x_{\max } \sin \omega t, \quad \omega=\sqrt{k / m}
\end{align*}
$$

### 2.5 Solving an Integral Numerically

As an example of an integral to solve numerically, consider the integral in Eq. (2.38). First, rewrite the integral as a sum,

$$
\begin{equation*}
t=\sum_{n=1}^{N} \Delta x\left[2\left(E-U\left(x_{n}\right) / m\right]^{-1 / 2}\right. \tag{2.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Delta x=\left(x-x_{0}\right) / N$ and $x_{n}=x_{0}+(n-1 / 2) \Delta x$. Note that for better accuracy the value of $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{n}}$ should be placed in the center of the $\boldsymbol{n}^{\text {th }}$ interval. The accuracy will improve for higher values of $N$, or equivalently, smaller step size $\Delta \boldsymbol{x}$. The pertinent part of a C++ program might look something like:

```
#include <cstdlib>
#include <cstdio>
using namespace std;
double U(double x){
    return "whatever function you like";
}
int main(){
    int n,N=100;
    double Deltax,x,x_n,t=0.0,E,mass=2.0;
    double x0,xf,v0; // intial and final positions and initial velocity
    printf("Enter initial and final positions: ");
    scanf("%lf %lf",&x0,&xf);
    printf("Enter initial velocity: ");
    scanf("%lf",&v0);
    E=0.5*mass*v0*v0+U(x0);
    x=x0;
```

```
    Deltax=(xf-x0)/N;
    for(x_n=x0+0.5*Deltax;x_n<xf;x_n+=Deltax){
        t+=Deltax/sqrt(2*(E-U(x_n))/m);
        x+=Deltax;
        printf("t=%g, x=%g\n",t,x);
    }
    return 0;
}
```


### 2.6 Numerically Solving Equations of Motion from Potentials

A more straight-forward way to solve for equations of motion from potentials is to generate the force from the potentials,

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(x)=-\partial_{x} V(x) \tag{2.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

then to solve the equations of motion for a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ undergoing a known force $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{x})$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{x} & =v  \tag{2.43}\\
\dot{v} & =\frac{1}{m} F(x) . \tag{2.44}
\end{align*}
$$

Numerically, the two equations can be written,

$$
\begin{align*}
x_{n+1} & =x_{n}+v_{n+1 / 2} \Delta t  \tag{2.45}\\
v_{n+3 / 2} & =v_{n+1 / 2}+\frac{1}{m} F\left(x_{n+1}\right) \Delta t \tag{2.46}
\end{align*}
$$

Here, the subscript refers to the discretized time, $\boldsymbol{t}=\boldsymbol{n} \boldsymbol{\Delta} \boldsymbol{t}$. Note that the r.h.s. of each equation is centered at the midpoint of the time interval used to take the derivative. This is crucial for numerical accuracy. If the formula had been of the form $x_{n+1}=x_{n}+v_{n} \Delta t$, there is a numeric error linear with the time step size. By centering the derivatives as done above, the error increases quadratically with the step size, and is far more accurate. The algorithm above, where the positions and forces are specified at integral time steps, whereas the velocities are specified at half-integral time steps is known as the leap-from algorithm. This works wonderfully when the force depends only on position. If one adds velocity dependent forces, one must rethink the method (perhaps some kind of Runge-Kutta).

### 2.7 Conservation of Momentum

Newton's third law, "For every action there is an equal and opposite reaction", is more accurately stated in the text,

If two bodies exert forces on each other, these forces are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction.

This means that for two bodies $\boldsymbol{i}$ and $\boldsymbol{j}$, if the force on $\boldsymbol{i}$ due to $\boldsymbol{j}$ is called $\boldsymbol{F}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{F}_{i j}=-\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{j i} \tag{2.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

Newton's second law, $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}=\boldsymbol{m} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{a}}$, can be written for a particle $\boldsymbol{i}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{F}_{i}=\sum_{j \neq i} \vec{F}_{i j}=m_{i} \vec{a}_{i} \tag{2.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$ (a single subscript) denotes the net force acting on $\boldsymbol{i}$. Because the mass of $\boldsymbol{i}$ is fixed, one can see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{i}=\frac{d}{d t} \boldsymbol{m}_{i} \vec{v}_{i}=\sum_{j \neq i} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{i j} \tag{2.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, one can sum over all the particles and obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d}{d t} \sum_{i} m_{i} v_{i} & =\sum_{i j, i \neq j} \vec{F}_{i j}  \tag{2.50}\\
& =0
\end{align*}
$$

The last step made use of the fact that for every term $\boldsymbol{i j}$, there is an equivalent term $\boldsymbol{j} \boldsymbol{i}$ with opposite force. Because the momentum is defined as $\boldsymbol{m} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}$, for a system of particles,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \sum_{i} m_{i} \vec{v}_{i}=0, \text { for isolated particles. } \tag{2.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

By "isolated" one means that the only force acting on any particle $i$ are those originating from other particles in the sum, i.e. no "external" forces. Thus, Newton's third law leads to the conservation of total momentum,

$$
\begin{align*}
\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{P}} & =\sum_{i} m_{i} \vec{v}_{i}  \tag{2.52}\\
\frac{d}{d t} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{P}} & =0
\end{align*}
$$

## Example 2.3: Standard Rocket Problem

Consider a rocket of mass $\boldsymbol{M}_{0}$ that ejects gas from the bottom of the rocket with a speed $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{e}}$ relative to the rocket. The rocket's mass reduces as the fuel is ejected by a rate $\alpha=-\boldsymbol{d M} / \boldsymbol{d t}$. Find the speed of the rocket as a function of time in terms of the initial mass and $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$. Neglect gravity.
Solution:
Consider the rocket of mass $M$ moving with velocity $\boldsymbol{v}$. After a brief instant, the velocity of the rocket is $v+\Delta v$ and the mass is $\boldsymbol{v}-\Delta m_{f}$, where $\boldsymbol{m}_{f}$ is the amount fuel burned.

Momentum conservation gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
M v & =\left(M-\Delta M_{f}\right)(v+\Delta v)+\Delta M_{f}\left(v-v_{e}\right) \\
0 & =-\Delta M v+M \Delta v+\Delta M_{f}\left(v-v_{e}\right) \\
0 & =M \Delta v-\Delta M_{f} v_{e}
\end{aligned}
$$

In the second step we ignored the term $\Delta M \Delta v$ because it is doubly small. The last equation gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta v=\frac{v_{e}}{M} \Delta M_{f}=-\frac{v_{e}}{M} \Delta M \tag{2.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Delta \boldsymbol{M}$, the change is mass of the rocket is $-\boldsymbol{\Delta} \boldsymbol{M}_{\boldsymbol{f}}$. After dividing both sides of the equation by $\Delta t$, the acceleration is then

$$
\frac{d v}{d t}=-\frac{v_{e}}{M} \frac{d M}{d t}
$$

Integrating the expression with lower limits $\boldsymbol{v}_{\mathbf{0}}=\mathbf{0}$ and $\boldsymbol{M}_{\mathbf{0}}$, one finds

$$
\begin{aligned}
v & =-v_{e} \int_{M_{0}}^{M} \frac{d M^{\prime}}{M^{\prime}} \\
v & =-v_{e} \ln \left(M / M_{0}\right) \\
& =-v_{e} \ln \left[\left(M_{0}-\alpha t\right) / M_{0}\right]=v_{e} \ln \left[M_{0} /\left(M_{0}-\alpha t\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\alpha=d M_{f} / d t$ is the rate fuel is being burned.
Because the total momentum of an isolated system is constant, one can also quickly see that the center of mass of an isolated system is constant. The center of mass is the average position of a set of masses weighted by the mass,

$$
\bar{x}=\frac{\sum_{i} m_{i} x_{i}}{\sum_{i} m_{i}}
$$

The rate of change of $\overline{\boldsymbol{x}}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\bar{x}}=\frac{1}{M} \sum_{i} m_{i} \dot{x}_{i}=\frac{1}{M} P_{x} \tag{2.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus if the total momentum is constant the center of mass moves at a constant velocity, and if the total momentum is zero the center of mass is fixed.

### 2.8 Conservation of Angular Momentum

Consider a case where the force always points radially,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{F}(\vec{r})=F(r) \hat{r} \tag{2.55}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{r}$ is a unit vector pointing outward from the origin. The angular momentum is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{L}=\vec{r} \times \vec{p}=m \vec{r} \times \vec{v} \tag{2.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

The rate of change of the angular momentum is

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d \vec{L}}{d t} & =m \vec{v} \times \vec{v}+m \vec{r} \times \dot{\vec{v}}  \tag{2.57}\\
& =m \vec{v} \times \vec{v}+\vec{r} \times \vec{F}=0
\end{align*}
$$

The first term is zero because $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}$ is parallel to itself, and the second term is zero because $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}$ is parallel to $\vec{r}$.
As an aside, one can see from the Levi-Civita symbol that the cross product of a vector with itself is zero. Here, we consider a vector

$$
\begin{align*}
\vec{V} & =\vec{A} \times \vec{A}  \tag{2.58}\\
V_{i} & =(\vec{A} \times \vec{A})_{i}=\sum_{j k} \epsilon_{i j k} A_{j} A_{k}
\end{align*}
$$

For any term $\boldsymbol{i}$, there are two contributions. For example, for $\boldsymbol{i}$ denoting the $\boldsymbol{x}$ direction, either $\boldsymbol{j}$ denotes the $\boldsymbol{y}$ direction and $\boldsymbol{k}$ denotes the $\boldsymbol{z}$ direction, or vice versa, so

$$
\begin{equation*}
V_{1}=\epsilon_{123} A_{2} A_{3}+\epsilon_{132} A_{3} A_{2} \tag{2.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is zero by the antisymmetry of $\epsilon$ under permutations.
If the force is not radial, $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}} \times \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}} \neq 0$ in Eq. (2.57), and angular momentum is no longer conserved,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d \vec{L}}{d t}=\vec{r} \times \vec{F} \equiv \vec{\tau} \tag{2.60}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\vec{\tau}$ is the torque.
For a system of isolated particles, one can write

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d}{d t} \sum_{i} \vec{L}_{i} & =\sum_{i \neq j} \vec{r}_{i} \times \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{i j}  \tag{2.61}\\
& =\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq j} \vec{r}_{i} \times \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{i j}+\vec{r}_{j} \times \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{j i} \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i \neq j}\left(\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{r}_{j}\right) \times \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{i j} \\
& =0, \text { if two-body forces are parallel to one another. } \tag{2.62}
\end{align*}
$$

Here, going from the second line to the third line used Newton's third law, $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{i j}=-\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{j i}$. If the forces between the particles are parallel to their separation, i.e. $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{i j} \|\left(\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{i}-\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{j}\right)$, then each term in the sum is zero and the net angular momentum is fixed. Otherwise, you could imagine an isolated system that would start spinning spontaneously.

Extended rigid bodies have angular momentum even if their center of mass is not moving. If one considers a body rotating about the origin with angular velocity $\omega$ about the $\boldsymbol{z}$ axis, the velocity of any small part of the object has momentum,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{p}_{i}=m_{i} r_{i} \omega \hat{\phi} \tag{2.63}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{\phi}$ is a unit vector perpendicular to both $\vec{r}_{i}$ and the $z$ axis. The net angular momentum is

$$
\begin{align*}
\vec{L} & =\sum_{i} \vec{r}_{i} \times \vec{p}_{i}  \tag{2.64}\\
& =\sum_{i} m_{i} r_{i}^{2} \omega \hat{r} \times \hat{\phi} \\
L_{z} & =\sum_{i} m_{i} r_{i, \perp}^{2} \omega \\
r_{i, \perp} & =\sqrt{x_{i}^{2}+y_{i}^{2}}
\end{align*}
$$

Here, $\sum_{i} \boldsymbol{m}_{i} r_{i, \perp}^{2}$ is known as the moment of inertia about the $z$ axis, $I$, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{z}=I \omega \tag{2.65}
\end{equation*}
$$

Writing each small contribution to the mass as $d^{3} r_{i} \rho_{m}\left(\vec{r}_{i}\right)$, where $\rho_{m}$ is the mass density,

$$
\begin{equation*}
I=\int d^{3} r \rho(\vec{r})\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right) \tag{2.66}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the next mechanics course, you will study rigid body motion, at which time the moment of inertia will be considered more generally about any axis. It will then be identified as a secondrank tensor. For here, we consider a single axis.
If an extended rigid body is rotating about its center-of-mass, and if the center-of-mass is moving, one can express the total angular momentum as the sum of that around the center-of-mass and the angular momentum of the center-of-mass, $\boldsymbol{R}_{c m}$.

$$
\begin{align*}
\vec{L} & =\sum_{i} m_{i}\left(\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{R}_{\mathrm{cm}}\right) \times \vec{v}_{i}+M \vec{R}_{\mathrm{cm}} \times \vec{V}_{\mathrm{cm}}  \tag{2.67}\\
\vec{V}_{\mathrm{cm}} & \equiv \frac{1}{M} \sum_{i} \vec{p}_{i} \\
\vec{R}_{\mathrm{cm}} & \equiv \frac{1}{M} \sum_{i} m_{i} \vec{r}_{i} \tag{2.68}
\end{align*}
$$

Now to express the first term for $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{L}}$ in terms of the velocities relative to the center-of-mass frame, plus the contribution from the velocity of the center-of-mass frame,

$$
\begin{align*}
\vec{L}= & \sum_{i} m_{i}\left(\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{R}_{\mathrm{cm}}\right) \times\left(\vec{v}_{i}-\vec{V}_{\mathrm{cm}}\right)+\left(\sum_{i} m_{i}\left(\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{R}_{\mathrm{cm}}\right)\right) \times \vec{V}_{\mathrm{cm}}  \tag{2.69}\\
& +M \vec{R}_{\mathrm{cm}} \times \vec{V}_{\mathrm{cm}} \tag{2.70}
\end{align*}
$$

The middle term vanishes because of the definition of the center-of-mass,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i} m_{i} \vec{r}_{i}=M \vec{R} \tag{2.71}
\end{equation*}
$$

This gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{L}=\sum_{i} m_{i}\left(\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{R}_{\mathrm{cm}}\right) \times\left(\vec{v}_{i}-\vec{V}_{\mathrm{cm}}\right)+M \vec{R}_{\mathrm{cm}} \times \vec{V}_{\mathrm{cm}} \tag{2.72}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the first term representing the angular momentum as defined by an observer positioned at the center-of-mass and moving with the velocity of the center-of-mass, and the second term represents the angular momentum of the center-of-mass.

## Example 2.4: Rolling Disk

Here, we consider a uniform disk of mass $\boldsymbol{M}$ and radius $\boldsymbol{a}$ that initially has zero velocity, but is rotating with angular momentum $\omega$, with the axis of rotation parallel to the ground. It is then lowered by a very small distance so that it comes into contact with the ground, a horizontal plane. The disk is initially slipping on the surface, but after some time the slipping stops and the disk rolls without friction.
a. What is the moment of inertia of the disk?
b. What is the initial angular momentum of the disk about the point where the disk initially comes into contact with the disk, i.e. at the bottom of the disk?
c. Is angular momentum about this point conserved? Is is conserved about a point defined by the initial center-of-mass of the disk?
d. What is the final speed of the disk?

## Solution:

a.) Integrating over the density per unit area, $\rho=M /\left(\pi a^{2}\right)$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
I & =\frac{M}{\pi a^{2}} \int 2 \pi r d r r^{2} \\
& =\frac{M a^{2}}{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

b.) The initial angular momentum about the point at the bottom of the disk is the same as the angular momentum about the center-of-mass because the center-of-mass is not initially moving.

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=I \omega_{0} \tag{2.73}
\end{equation*}
$$

c.) There are three forces acting on the disk: gravity, the normal force, and friction. The first two cancel one another. Because friction is horizontal and acts on the bottom of the disk, angular momentum about a point at the bottom of the disk will be conserved because the frictional force provides no torque in that coordinate system. However, if one defines the
origin as the point initially at the center of the disk, then the frictional force does provide a torque, and angular momentum would not be conserved in that case.
d.) One can find the final speed by using conservation of angular momentum,

$$
I \omega_{0}=I \omega_{f}+M v_{f} a
$$

Once the sliding stops, the final velocity and final rotational velocities are related by $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{f}}=$ $\boldsymbol{a} \boldsymbol{\omega}_{\boldsymbol{f}}$, and

$$
\begin{aligned}
I \omega_{0} & =\left(\frac{I}{a}+M a\right) v_{f} \\
v_{f} & =\frac{a \omega_{0}}{1+M a^{2} / I} \\
& =\frac{1}{3} a \omega_{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

One can write the torque about a given axis, which we will denote as $\hat{\boldsymbol{z}}$, in polar coordinates. In polar coordinates

$$
\begin{equation*}
x=r \sin \theta \cos \phi, y=r \sin \theta \sin \phi, z=r \cos \theta \tag{2.74}
\end{equation*}
$$

To find the $z$ component of the torque,

$$
\begin{align*}
\tau_{z} & =x F_{y}-y F_{x}  \tag{2.75}\\
& =-r \sin \theta\left\{\cos \phi \partial_{y}-\sin \phi \partial_{x}\right\} V(x, y, z)
\end{align*}
$$

One can use the chain rule to write the partial derivative w.r.t. $\phi$ (keeping $r$ and $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ fixed),

$$
\begin{align*}
\partial_{\phi} & =\frac{\partial x}{\partial \phi} \partial_{x}+\frac{\partial_{y}}{\partial \phi} \partial_{y}+\frac{\partial z}{\partial \phi} \partial_{z}  \tag{2.76}\\
& =-r \sin \theta \sin \phi \partial_{x}+r \sin \theta \cos \phi \partial_{y}
\end{align*}
$$

Combining the two equations,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau_{z}=-\partial_{\phi} V(r, \theta, \phi) \tag{2.77}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, if the potential is independent of the azimuthal angle $\phi$, there is no torque about the $\boldsymbol{z}$ axis and $L_{z}$ is conserved.

### 2.9 Symmetries and Conservation Laws

When we derived the conservation of energy, we assumed that the potential depended only on position, not on time. If it depended explicitly on time, one can quickly see that the energy would have changed at a rate $\partial_{t} V(x, y, z, t)$. Note that if there is no explicit dependence on time, i.e. $V(x, y, z)$, the potential energy can depend on time through the variations of $\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{z}$ with time. However, that variation does not lead to energy non-conservation. Further, we just
saw that if a potential does not depend on the azimuthal angle about some axis, $\phi$, that the angular momentum about that axis is conserved.
Now, we relate momentum conservation to translational invariance of the potential, i.e. the potential does not depend on one or more of the coordinates, $\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{z}$. Considering a system of particles with positions, $\vec{r}_{i}$, if one changed the coordinate system by a translation by a differential distance $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}$, the net potential would change by

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta V\left(\vec{r}_{1}, \vec{r}_{2} \cdots\right) & =\sum_{i} \vec{\epsilon} \cdot \nabla_{i} V\left(\vec{r}_{1}, \vec{r}_{2}, \cdots\right)  \tag{2.78}\\
& =-\sum_{i} \vec{\epsilon} \cdot \vec{F}_{i} \\
& =-\vec{\epsilon} \cdot \frac{d}{d t} \sum_{i} \vec{p}_{i}
\end{align*}
$$

Thus, if the potential is unchanged by a translation of the coordinate system, the total momentum is conserved. If the potential is translationally invariant in a given direction, defined by a unit vector, $\hat{\epsilon}$ in the $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}$ direction, one can see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{\epsilon} \cdot \nabla_{i} V\left(\vec{r}_{i}\right)=0 \tag{2.79}
\end{equation*}
$$

The component of the total momentum along that axis is conserved. This is rather obvious for a single particle. If $\boldsymbol{V}(\vec{r})$ does not depend on some coordinate $\boldsymbol{x}$, then the force in the $\boldsymbol{x}$ direction is $\boldsymbol{F}_{\boldsymbol{x}}=-\boldsymbol{\partial}_{\boldsymbol{x}} \boldsymbol{V}=\mathbf{0}$, and momentum along the $\boldsymbol{x}$ direction is constant.
We showed how the total momentum of an isolated system of particle was conserved, even if the particles feel internal forces in all directions. In that case the potential energy could be written

$$
\begin{equation*}
V=\sum_{i, j \leq i} V_{i j}\left(\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{r}_{j}\right) \tag{2.80}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this case, a translation leads to $\vec{r}_{i} \rightarrow \vec{r}_{i}+\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}$, with the translation equally affecting the coordinates of each particle. Because the potential depends only on the relative coordinates, $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{V}$ is manifestly zero because the translation does not change $\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{r}_{j}$. If one were to go through the exercise of calculating $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{V}$ for small $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}$ in Eq. (2.78), one would find that the term $\nabla_{i} \boldsymbol{V}_{i j}\left(\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{r}_{j}\right)$ would be canceled by the term $\nabla_{j} V_{i j}\left(\vec{r}_{i}-\vec{r}_{j}\right)$.
The relation between symmetries of the potential and conserved quantities (also called constants of motion) is one of the most profound concepts one should gain from this course. It plays a critical role in all fields of physics. This is especially true in quantum mechanics, where a quantity $\boldsymbol{A}$ is conserved if its operator commutes with the Hamiltonian. For example if the momentum operator $-i \hbar \partial_{x}$ commutes with the Hamiltonian, momentum is conserved, and clearly this operator commutes if the Hamiltonian (which represents the total energy, not just the potential) does not depend on $\boldsymbol{x}$. Also in quantum mechanics the angular momentum operator is $L_{z}=-i \hbar \boldsymbol{\partial}_{\phi}$. In fact, if the potential is unchanged by rotations about some axis, angular momentum about that axis is conserved. Later in the course, we return to this concept, from a more formal perspective, when Lagrangian mechanics is presented.

## Example 2.5: Conservation Laws

Consider a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ moving according to the potential

$$
V(x, y, z)=A \exp \left\{-\frac{x^{2}+z^{2}}{2 a^{2}}\right\}
$$

Of the quantities, $\boldsymbol{E}, \boldsymbol{p}_{x}, \boldsymbol{p}_{y}, \boldsymbol{p}_{z}, \boldsymbol{L}_{x}, \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{y}}, \boldsymbol{L}_{z}$ are conserved?
Solution:
One has both rotational and translational invariance about the $\boldsymbol{y}$ axis, so $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{y}}$ and $\boldsymbol{p}_{\boldsymbol{y}}$ are conserved. Because the potential does not depend explicitly on time, energy is also conserved.

### 2.10 Exercises

1. Consider a bicyclist with air resistance proportional to $\boldsymbol{v}^{2}$ and rolling resistance proportional to $v$, so that

$$
\frac{d v}{d t}=-B v^{2}-C v
$$

If the cyclist has initial velocity $\boldsymbol{v}_{0}$ and is coasting on a flat course, a) find her velocity as a function of time, and $b$ ) find her position as a function of time.
2. For Eq. (2.22) show that in the limit where $\gamma \rightarrow 0$ one finds $t=2 v_{0 y} / g$.
3. The motion of a charged particle in an electromagnetic field can be obtained from the Lorentz equation. If the electric field vector is $\mathbf{E}$ and the magnetic field is $\mathbf{B}$, the force on a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ that carries a charge $\boldsymbol{q}$ and has a velocity $\mathbf{v}$

$$
\vec{F}=q \vec{E}+q \vec{v} \times \vec{B}
$$

where we assume $\boldsymbol{v} \ll \boldsymbol{c}$ (speed of light).
(a) If there is no electric field and if the particle enters the magnetic field in a direction perpendicular to the lines of magnetic flux, show that the trajectory is a circle with radius

$$
r=\frac{m v}{q B}=\frac{v}{\omega_{c}}
$$

where $\omega_{c} \equiv q B / m$ is the cyclotron frequency.
(b) Choose the $\boldsymbol{z}$-axis to lie in the direction of $\mathbf{B}$ and let the plane containing $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ be the $y z$-plane. Thus

$$
\mathrm{B}=B \hat{k}, \quad \mathrm{E}=E_{y} \hat{j}+E_{z} \hat{k}
$$

Show that the $z$ component of the motion is given by

$$
z(t)=z_{0}+\dot{z}_{0} t+\frac{q E_{z}}{2 m} t^{2}
$$

where

$$
z(0) \equiv z_{0} \quad \text { and } \quad \dot{z}(0) \equiv \dot{z}_{0}
$$

(c) Continue the calculation and obtain expressions for $\dot{\boldsymbol{x}}(\boldsymbol{t})$ and $\dot{\boldsymbol{y}}(\boldsymbol{t})$. Show that the time averages of these velocity components are

$$
\langle\dot{\boldsymbol{x}}\rangle=\frac{\boldsymbol{E}_{y}}{\boldsymbol{B}}, \quad\langle\dot{\boldsymbol{y}}\rangle=0
$$

I.e. show that the motion is periodic and then average over one complete period. Hint: write equations of motion for $\boldsymbol{v}_{y}$ and for $\tilde{\boldsymbol{v}}_{x} \equiv \boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{x}}-\boldsymbol{E}_{y} / \boldsymbol{B}$.
(d) Integrate the velocity equations found in (c) and show (with the initial conditions $x(0)=-A / \omega_{c}, \dot{x}(0)=E_{y} / B, y(0)=0, \dot{y}(0)=A$ that

$$
x(t)=\frac{-A}{\omega_{c}} \cos \omega_{c} t+\frac{E_{y}}{B} t, \quad y(t)=\frac{A}{\omega_{c}} \sin \omega_{c} t
$$

These are the parametric equations of a trochoid. Sketch the projections of the trajectory on the $\boldsymbol{x} \boldsymbol{y}$-plane for the cases (i) $\boldsymbol{A}>\left|\boldsymbol{E}_{\boldsymbol{y}} / \boldsymbol{B}\right|$, (ii) $\boldsymbol{A}<\left|\boldsymbol{E}_{\boldsymbol{y}} / \boldsymbol{B}\right|$, and (iii) $\boldsymbol{A}=\left|\boldsymbol{E}_{y} / \boldsymbol{B}\right|$. (The last case yields a cycloid.)
4. A particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ has velocity $\boldsymbol{v}=\boldsymbol{\alpha} / \boldsymbol{x}$, where $\boldsymbol{x}$ is its displacement. Find the force $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{x})$ responsible for the motion.
5. A particle is under the influence of a force $\boldsymbol{F}=-\boldsymbol{k} \boldsymbol{x}+\boldsymbol{k} \boldsymbol{x}^{3} / \alpha^{2}$, where $k$ and $\alpha$ are constants and $\boldsymbol{k}$ is positive. Determine $\boldsymbol{U}(\boldsymbol{x})$ and discuss the motion. What happens when $E=(1 / 4) k \alpha^{2}$ ?
6. Using Eq. (2.38) find the position as a function of a time by numerical integration for the case where a particle of mass $m$ moves under the potential $U(x)=U_{0} \sqrt{x / L}$ and for an initial velocity $v_{0}$. Use the following values: $m=2.5 \mathrm{~kg}, v_{0}=75.0, L=10 m$, $U_{0}=15 \mathrm{~J}$. Solve for time until the particle returns to the origin given that it started at the origin moving with velocity $\boldsymbol{v}_{\mathbf{0}}$. Make a graph of $\boldsymbol{x}$ vs $\boldsymbol{t}$ for the entire trajectory from your computer output. Turn in the graph and a printout of your program.
7. Prove that the work on the center of mass of a system of particles during a small time interval $\delta t$, which is defined by

$$
\delta W_{\mathrm{cm}} \equiv \vec{F}_{\mathrm{tot}} \cdot \delta \vec{r}_{\mathrm{cm}}
$$

is equal to the change of the kinetic energy of the center of mass,

$$
T_{\mathrm{cm}} \equiv \frac{1}{2} M_{\mathrm{tot}} v_{\mathrm{cm}}^{2}, \quad \delta T_{\mathrm{cm}}=M_{\mathrm{tot}} \vec{v}_{\mathrm{cm}} \cdot \delta \vec{v}_{\mathrm{cm}}
$$

Use the following definitions:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{\mathrm{tot}} & =\sum_{i} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{i} \\
M_{\mathrm{tot}} & =\sum_{i} m_{i} \\
\vec{r}_{c m} & =\frac{1}{M_{\mathrm{tot}}} \sum_{i} m_{i} \vec{r}_{i} \\
\vec{v}_{c m} & =\frac{1}{M_{\mathrm{tot}}} \sum_{i} m_{i} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}_{i} .
\end{aligned}
$$

8. Consider a rocket with initial mass $M_{0}$ at rest in deep space. It fires its engines which eject mass with an exhaust speed $\boldsymbol{v}_{e}$ relative to the rocket. The rocket loses mass at a constant rate $\alpha=\boldsymbol{d M} / \boldsymbol{d t}$. Find the speed of the rocket as a function of time.
9. Imagine that a rocket can be built so that the best percentage of fuel to overall mass is 0.9 . Explain the advantage of having stages.
10. Ted and his iceboat have a combined mass of 200 kg . Ted's boat slides without friction on the top of a frozen lake. Ted's boat has a winch and he wishes to wind up a long heavy rope of mass 300 kg and length 100 m that is laid out in a straight line on the ice. Ted's boat starts at rest at one end of the rope, then brings the rope on board the ice boat at a constant rate of $0.25 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}$. After 400 seconds the rope is all aboard the iceboat.
(a) Before Ted turns on the winch, what is the position of the center of mass relative to the boat?
(b) Immediately after Ted starts the winch, what is his speed?
(c) Immediately after the rope is entirely on the boat, what is Ted's speed?
(d) Immediately after the rope is entirely on board, what is Ted's displacement relative to his original position?
(e) Immediately after the rope is entirely on board, where is the center of mass compared to Ted's original position?
(f) Find Ted's velocity as a function of time.
11. Two disks are initially at rest, each of mass $M$, connected by a string between their centers. The disks slide on low-friction ice as the center of the string is pulled by a string with a constant force $\boldsymbol{F}$ through a distance $\boldsymbol{d}$. The disks collide and stick together, having moved a distance $\boldsymbol{b}$ horizontally. Determine the final speed of the disks just after they collide. You may want to use the derivations from number 7.

12. Santa Claus is skating on the magic ice near the North Pole, which is frictionless. A massless rope sticks out from the pole horizontally along a straight line. The rope's original length is $\boldsymbol{L}_{\mathbf{0}}$. Santa approaches the rope moving perpendicular to the direction of the rope and grabs the end of the rope. The diameter of the North Pole is $2 a$. The rope then winds around the thin pole, $a \ll \boldsymbol{L}_{0}$, until Santa is half the original distance, $\boldsymbol{L}_{\mathbf{0}} / \mathbf{2}$, from the
pole. If Santa's original speed was $\boldsymbol{v}_{0}$, what is his new speed? Assume there is no energy wasted in curving the rope around the pole.

## 3 Oscillations

### 3.1 Harmonic Oscillator

The harmonic oscillator is omnipresent in physics. Although students think of this as being related to springs, it, or an equivalent mathematical representation, appears in just about any problem where a mode is sitting near its potential energy minimum. At that point, $\partial_{x} V(x)=0$, and the first non-zero term (aside from a constant) in the potential energy is that of a harmonic oscillator. In a solid, sound modes (phonons) are built on a picture of coupled harmonic oscillators, and in relativistic field theory the fundamental interactions are also built on coupled oscillators positioned infinitesimally close to one another in space. The phenomena of a resonance of an oscillator driven at a fixed frequency plays out repeatedly in atomic, nuclear and high-energy physics, when quantum mechanically the evolution of a state oscillates according to $e^{-i E t / \hbar}$ and exciting discrete quantum states has very similar mathematics as exciting a harmonic oscillator with its resonant frequency.
The potential energy for a single particle as a function of its position $\boldsymbol{x}$ can be written as a Taylor expansion about some point $x_{0}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
V(x)=V\left(x_{0}\right)+\left.\left(x-x_{0}\right) \partial_{x} V(x)\right|_{x_{0}}+\left.\frac{1}{2}\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2} \partial_{x}^{2} V(x)\right|_{x_{0}}+\left.\frac{1}{3!} \partial_{x}^{3} V(x)\right|_{x_{0}}+\cdots \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the position $x_{0}$ is at the minimum of the potential, the first two non-zero terms of the potential are

$$
\begin{align*}
V(x) & \approx V\left(x_{0}\right)+\left.\frac{1}{2}\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2} \partial_{x}^{2} V(x)\right|_{x_{0}}  \tag{3.2}\\
& =V\left(x_{0}\right)+\frac{1}{2} k\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2},\left.\quad k \equiv \partial_{x}^{2} V(x)\right|_{x_{0}} \\
F & =-\partial_{x} V(x)=-k\left(x-x_{0}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

This the usual force for a body attached to a spring, where $\boldsymbol{k}$ is the spring constant and the equilibrium position is $x_{0}$.
Put into Newton's 2nd law (assuming $x_{0}=0$ ),

$$
\begin{align*}
m \ddot{x} & =-k x  \tag{3.3}\\
\ddot{x} & =-\omega_{0}^{2} x  \tag{3.4}\\
x(t) & =A \cos \left(\omega_{0} t-\phi\right), \quad \omega_{0}=\sqrt{k / m} \tag{3.5}
\end{align*}
$$

Here, $\boldsymbol{A}$ and $\phi$ are arbitrary. This expresses the profound fact that the harmonic oscillator oscillates with a frequency, $f_{0}=\omega_{0} / 2 \pi$, which is independent of the amplitude.
Equivalently, one could have written $\boldsymbol{x}(t)$ as $\boldsymbol{A} \boldsymbol{\operatorname { c o s }}\left(\omega_{0} t\right)+B \sin \left(\omega_{0} t\right)$, or as the real part of $A e^{i \omega_{0} t}$. In this last case $\boldsymbol{A}$ could be an arbitrary complex constant. Thus, there are 2 arbitrary constants (either $\boldsymbol{A}$ and $\boldsymbol{B}$ or $\boldsymbol{A}$ and $\phi$, or the real and imaginary part of one complex constant. This is the expectation for a second order differential equation, and also agrees with the physical
expectation that if you know a particle's initial velocity and position you should be able to define its future motion, and that those two arbitrary conditions should translate to two arbitrary constants.
A key feature of harmonic motion is that the system repeats itself after a time $T=1 / f$, where $f$ is the frequency, and $\omega=2 \pi f$ is the angular frequency. The period of the motion is independent of the amplitude. However, this independence is only exact when one can neglect higher terms of the potential, $\boldsymbol{x}^{3}, \boldsymbol{x}^{4} \cdots$. One can neglect these terms for sufficiently small amplitudes. For larger amplitudes, the cubic or quartic terms might become relevant and the motion would no longer be purely sinusoidal, and even though the motion repeats itself, the time for repeating the motion is no longer independent of the amplitude.
One can also calculate the velocity and kinetic energy as a function of time,

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{x} & =-\omega_{0} A \sin \left(\omega_{0} t-\phi\right)  \tag{3.6}\\
T & =\frac{1}{2} m \dot{x}^{2}=\frac{m \omega_{0}^{2} A^{2}}{2} \sin ^{2}\left(\omega_{0} t-\phi\right) \\
& =\frac{k}{2} A^{2} \sin ^{2}\left(\omega_{0} t-\phi\right)
\end{align*}
$$

The total energy is then

$$
\begin{align*}
E & =T+U=\frac{1}{2} m \dot{x}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} k x^{2}  \tag{3.7}\\
& =\frac{1}{2} m \dot{x}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} m \omega^{2} x^{2}  \tag{3.8}\\
& =\frac{1}{2} m \omega^{2} A^{2}=\frac{1}{2} k A^{2} . \tag{3.9}
\end{align*}
$$

This is the same as the potential energy when the magnitude of $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$ is at a maximum, or the kinetic energy when $\boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{x}_{0}$. The total energy scales as the square of the amplitude.

## Example 3.1: Pendulum

A pendulum is an example of a harmonic oscillator. By expanding the kinetic and potential energies for small angles, find the frequency of a pendulum of length $L$ with all the mass $m$ centered at the end by writing the eq.s of motion in the form of a harmonic oscillator.
Solution: The potential energy and kinetic energies are (for $\boldsymbol{x}$ being the displacement)

$$
\begin{aligned}
U & =m g L(1-\cos \theta) \approx m g L \frac{x^{2}}{2 L^{2}} \\
T & =\frac{1}{2} m L^{2} \dot{\theta}^{2} \approx \frac{m}{2} \dot{x}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Here, we have made use of the fact that for small angles, the distance moved is $\boldsymbol{x} \approx \boldsymbol{L} \boldsymbol{\theta}$. For small $\boldsymbol{x} / \boldsymbol{L}$ Newton's 2nd law becomes

$$
m \ddot{x}=-\frac{m g}{L} x
$$

and the spring constant would appear to be $\boldsymbol{k}=\boldsymbol{m g} / \boldsymbol{L}$, which makes the frequency equal to $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{0}=\sqrt{\boldsymbol{g} / \boldsymbol{L}}$. Note that the frequency is independent of the mass.

### 3.2 Damped Oscillators

In this chapter we consider only the case where the damping force is proportional to the velocity. This is counter to dragging friction, where the force is proportional in strength to the normal force and independent of velocity, and is also inconsistent with wind resistance, where the magnitude of the drag force is proportional the square of the velocity. Rolling resistance does seem to be mainly proportional to the velocity. However, the main motivation for considering damping forces proportional to the velocity is that the math is more friendly. This is because the differential equation is linear, i.e. each term is of order $\boldsymbol{x}, \dot{\boldsymbol{x}}, \ddot{\boldsymbol{x}} \cdots$, or even terms with no mention of $\boldsymbol{x}$, and there are no terms such as $\boldsymbol{x}^{2}$ or $\boldsymbol{x} \ddot{\boldsymbol{x}}$. Many systems in physics, not just in classical mechanics, are well described by similar linear differential equations.
The equations of motion for a spring with damping force $-\boldsymbol{b} \dot{\boldsymbol{x}}$ are

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \ddot{x}+b \dot{x}+k x=0 . \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Just to make the solution a bit less messy, we rewrite this equation as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ddot{x}+2 \beta \dot{x}+\omega_{0}^{2} x=0, \quad \beta \equiv b / 2 m, \omega_{0} \equiv \sqrt{k / m} . \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Both $\boldsymbol{\beta}$ and $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ have dimensions of inverse time. To find solutions you must make an educated guess at the form of the solution. To do this, first realize that the solution will need an arbitrary normalization $\boldsymbol{A}$ because the equation is linear. Or in other words, if you find a solution to Eq. (3.11), you can multiply the expression by an arbitrary constant and the new expression will also be a solution because every term is Eq. (3.11 is linear in $\boldsymbol{x}$ or its derivatives.
Secondly, realize that if the form is

$$
\begin{equation*}
x=A e^{r t} \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

each derivative simply brings out an extra power of $\boldsymbol{r}$. This means that the $\boldsymbol{A} \boldsymbol{e}^{r t}$ factors out and one can simply solve for an equation for $\boldsymbol{r}$. Plugging this form into Eq. (3.11),

$$
\begin{equation*}
r^{2}+2 \beta r+\omega_{0}^{2}=0 \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because this is a quadratic equation there will be two solutions,

$$
\begin{equation*}
r=-\beta \pm \sqrt{\beta^{2}-\omega_{0}^{2}} \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

We refer to the two solutions as $\boldsymbol{r}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{r}_{2}$ corresponding to the + and - roots. As expected, there should be two arbitrary constants involved in the solution,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{A}_{1} e^{r_{1} t}+\boldsymbol{A}_{2} e^{r_{2} t} \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the coefficients $\boldsymbol{A}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{A}_{\mathbf{2}}$ are determined by initial conditions.
The roots listed above, $\sqrt{\omega_{0}^{2}-\boldsymbol{\beta}^{2}}$, will be imaginary if the damping is small and $\boldsymbol{\beta}<\boldsymbol{\omega}_{0}$. In that case, $r$ is complex and the factor $e^{r t}$ will have some oscillatory behavior. If the roots are real, there will only be exponentially decaying solutions. There are three cases:

1. Underdamped: $\boldsymbol{\beta}<\boldsymbol{\omega}_{\mathbf{0}}$

$$
\begin{align*}
x & =A_{1} e^{-\beta t} e^{i \omega^{\prime} t}+A_{2} e^{-\beta t} e^{-i \omega^{\prime} t}, \omega^{\prime} \equiv \sqrt{\omega_{0}^{2}-\beta^{2}}  \tag{3.16}\\
& =\left(A_{1}+A_{2}\right) e^{-\beta t} \cos \omega^{\prime} t+i\left(A_{1}-A_{2}\right) e^{-\beta t} \sin \omega^{\prime} t
\end{align*}
$$

Here we have made use of the identity $e^{i \omega^{\prime} t}=\boldsymbol{\operatorname { c o s }} \omega^{\prime} t+i \sin \omega^{\prime} t$. Because the constants are arbitrary, and because the real and imaginary parts are both solutions individually, we can simply consider the real part of the solution alone:

$$
\begin{align*}
x & =B_{1} e^{-\beta t} \cos \omega^{\prime} t+B_{2} e^{-\beta t} \sin \omega^{\prime} t  \tag{3.17}\\
\omega^{\prime} & \equiv \sqrt{\omega_{0}^{2}-\beta^{2}}
\end{align*}
$$

2. Critical dampling: $\beta=\boldsymbol{\omega}_{0}$

In this case the two terms involving $r_{1}$ and $r_{2}$ are identical because $\omega^{\prime}=0$. Because we need to arbitrary constants, there needs to be another solution. Again, this is found by simply guessing, or by taking the limit of $\boldsymbol{\omega}^{\prime} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$ from the underdamped solution. The solution is then

$$
\begin{equation*}
x=A e^{-\beta t}+B t e^{-\beta t} \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

The critically damped solution is interesting because the solution approaches zero quickly, but does not oscillate. For a problem with zero initial velocity, the solution never crosses zero. This is a good choice for designing shock absorbers or swinging doors.
3. Overdamped: $\boldsymbol{\beta}>\boldsymbol{\omega}_{0}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
x=A_{1} e^{-\left(\beta+\sqrt{\beta^{2}-\omega_{0}^{2}}\right) t}+A_{2} e^{-\left(\beta-\sqrt{\beta^{2}-\omega_{0}^{2}}\right) t} \tag{3.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

This solution will also never pass the origin more than once, and then only if the initial velocity is strong and initially toward zero.

## Example 3.2: Damped Oscillator

Given $\boldsymbol{b}, \boldsymbol{m}$ and $\omega_{0}$, find $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$ for a particle whose initial position is $\boldsymbol{x}=\mathbf{0}$ and has initial velocity $\boldsymbol{v}_{0}$ (assuming an underdamped solution).
Solution: The solution is of the form,

$$
\begin{aligned}
x & =e^{-\beta t}\left[A_{1} \cos \omega^{\prime} t+A_{2} \sin \omega^{\prime} t\right] \\
\dot{x} & =-\beta x+\omega^{\prime} e^{-\beta t}\left[-A_{1} \sin \omega^{\prime} t+A_{2} \cos \omega^{\prime} t\right] \\
\omega^{\prime} & \equiv \sqrt{\omega_{0}^{2}-\beta^{2}}, \quad \beta \equiv b / 2 m
\end{aligned}
$$

From the initial conditions, $\boldsymbol{A}_{1}=0$ because $\boldsymbol{x}(0)=0$ and $\boldsymbol{\omega}^{\prime} \boldsymbol{A}_{2}=\boldsymbol{v}_{0}$. So

$$
x=\frac{v_{0}}{\omega^{\prime}} e^{-\beta t} \sin \omega^{\prime} t
$$

### 3.3 Sinusoidally Driven Oscillators

Here, we consider the force

$$
\begin{equation*}
F=-k x-b \dot{x}+F_{0} \cos \omega t \tag{3.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

which leads to the differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ddot{x}+2 \beta \dot{x}+\omega_{0}^{2} x=\left(F_{0} / m\right) \cos \omega t . \tag{3.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider a single solution with no arbitrary constants, which we will call a particular solution, $x_{p}(t)$. It should be emphasized that this is A particular solution, because there exists an infinite number of such solutions because the general solution should have two arbitrary constants. Now consider solutions to the same equation without the driving term, which include two arbitrary constants. These are called either homogenous solutions or complementary solutions, and were given in the previous section, e.g. Eq. (3.17) for the underdamped case. The homogenous solution already incorporates the two arbitrary constants, so any sum of a homogenous solution and a particular solution will represent the general solution of the equation. The general solution incorporates the two arbitrary constants $\boldsymbol{A}$ and $\boldsymbol{B}$ to accommodate the two initial conditions. One could have picked a different particular solution, i.e. the original particular solution plus any homogenous solution with the arbitrary constants $\boldsymbol{A}_{\boldsymbol{p}}$ and $\boldsymbol{B}_{\boldsymbol{p}}$ chosen at will. When one adds in the homogenous solution, which has adjustable constants with arbitrary constants $\boldsymbol{A}^{\prime}$ and $\boldsymbol{B}^{\prime}$, to the new particular solution, one can get the same general solution by simply adjusting the new constants such that $\boldsymbol{A}^{\prime}+\boldsymbol{A}_{\boldsymbol{p}}=\boldsymbol{A}$ and $\boldsymbol{B}^{\prime}+\boldsymbol{B}_{\boldsymbol{p}}=\boldsymbol{B}$. Thus, the choice of $\boldsymbol{A}_{\boldsymbol{p}}$ and $\boldsymbol{B}_{\boldsymbol{p}}$ are irrelevant, and when choosing the particular solution it is best to make the simplest choice possible.
To find a particular solution, one first guesses at the form,

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{p}(t)=D \cos (\omega t-\delta), \tag{3.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

and rewrite the differential equation as

$$
\begin{equation*}
D\left\{-\omega^{2} \cos (\omega t-\delta)-2 \beta \omega \sin (\omega t-\delta)+\omega_{0}^{2} \cos (\omega t-\delta)\right\}=\frac{F_{0}}{m} \cos (\omega t) \tag{3.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

One can now use angle addition formulas to get

$$
\begin{align*}
& D\left\{\left(-\omega^{2} \cos \delta+2 \beta \omega \sin \delta+\omega_{0}^{2} \cos \delta\right) \cos (\omega t)\right.  \tag{3.24}\\
& \left.\quad+\left(-\omega^{2} \sin \delta-2 \beta \omega \cos \delta+\omega_{0}^{2} \sin \delta\right) \sin (\omega t)\right\}=\frac{F_{0}}{m} \cos (\omega t)
\end{align*}
$$

Both the cos and sin terms need to equate if the expression is to hold at all times. Thus, this becomes two equations

$$
\begin{align*}
D\left\{-\omega^{2} \cos \delta+2 \beta \omega \sin \delta+\omega_{0}^{2} \cos \delta\right\} & =\frac{F_{0}}{m}  \tag{3.25}\\
-\omega^{2} \sin \delta-2 \beta \omega \cos \delta+\omega_{0}^{2} \sin \delta & =0
\end{align*}
$$

After dividing by $\cos \boldsymbol{\delta}$, the lower expression leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \delta=\frac{2 \beta \omega}{\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}} \tag{3.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the identities $\tan ^{2}+1=\csc ^{2}$ and $\sin ^{2}+\cos ^{2}=1$, one can also express $\sin \delta$ and $\cos \delta$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\sin \delta & =\frac{2 \beta \omega}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \omega^{2} \beta^{2}}}  \tag{3.27}\\
\cos \delta & =\frac{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \omega^{2} \beta^{2}}}
\end{align*}
$$

Inserting the expressions for $\cos \boldsymbol{\delta}$ and $\sin \boldsymbol{\delta}$ into the expression for $\boldsymbol{D}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
D=\frac{F_{0} / m}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \omega^{2} \beta^{2}}} \tag{3.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

For a given initial condition, e.g. initial displacement and velocity, one must add the homogenous solution, which has two arbitrary constants then solve for the two constants to satisfy the two initial conditions. However, because the homogenous solutions decay with time as $e^{-\beta t}$, the particular solution is all tha which has two arbitrary constantst remains at large times, and is therefore the steady state solution. Because the arbitrary constants are all in the homogenous solution, all memory of the initial conditions are lost at large times, $t \gg 1 / \beta$.
The amplitude of the motion, $D$, is linearly proportional to the driving force $\left(\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathbf{0}} / \boldsymbol{m}\right)$, but also depends on the driving frequency $\omega$. For small $\beta$ the maximum will occur at $\boldsymbol{\omega}=\boldsymbol{\omega}_{0}$. This is referred to as a resonance. In the limit $\boldsymbol{\beta} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$ the amplitude at resonance approaches infinity.

### 3.4 Alternative Derivation for Driven Oscillators

Here, we derive the same expressions as in Eq.s (3.22-3.28) but express the driving forces as

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(t)=F_{0} e^{i \omega t} \tag{3.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

rather than as $\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathbf{0}} \boldsymbol{\operatorname { c o s }} \boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{t}$. The real part of $\boldsymbol{F}$ is the same as before. For the differential equation,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ddot{x}+2 \beta \dot{x}+\omega_{0}^{2} x=\frac{F_{0}}{m} e^{i \omega t} \tag{3.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

one can treat $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$ as an imaginary function. Because the operations $\boldsymbol{d}^{2} / \boldsymbol{d} t^{2}$ and $d / d t$ are real and thus do not mix the real and imaginary parts of $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$, Eq. (3.30) is effectively 2 equations. Because $e^{\omega t}=\cos \omega t+i \sin \omega t$, the real part of the solution for $x(t)$ gives the solution for a driving force $\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathbf{0}} \cos \boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{t}$, and the imaginary part of $\boldsymbol{x}$ corresponds to the case where the driving force is $\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathbf{0}} \sin \omega \boldsymbol{t}$. It is rather easy to solve for the complex $\boldsymbol{x}$ in this case, and by taking the real part of the solution, one finds the answer for the $\cos \omega t$ driving force.
We assume a simple form for the particular solution

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{p}=D e^{i \omega t} \tag{3.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{D}$ is a complex constant.
From Eq. (3.30) one inserts the form for $x_{p}$ above to get

$$
\begin{array}{r}
D\left\{-\omega^{2}+2 i \beta \omega+\omega_{0}^{2}\right\} e^{i \omega t}=\left(F_{0} / m\right) e^{i \omega t}  \tag{3.32}\\
D=\frac{F_{0} / m}{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)+2 i \beta \omega}
\end{array}
$$

The norm and phase for $D=|D| e^{-i \delta}$ can be read by inspection,

$$
\begin{equation*}
|D|=\frac{F_{0} / m}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \beta^{2} \omega^{2}}}, \quad \tan \delta=\frac{2 \beta \omega}{\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}} \tag{3.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is the same expression for $\delta$ as before. One then finds $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{p}}(\boldsymbol{t})$,

$$
\begin{align*}
x_{p}(t) & =\Re \frac{\left(F_{0} / m\right) e^{i \omega t-i \delta}}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \beta^{2} \omega^{2}}}  \tag{3.34}\\
& =\frac{\left(F_{0} / m\right) \cos (\omega t-\delta)}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \beta^{2} \omega^{2}}}
\end{align*}
$$

This is the same answer as before. If one wished to solve for the case where $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t})=\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathbf{0}} \sin \boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{t}$, the imaginary part of the solution would work

$$
\begin{align*}
x_{p}(t) & =\Im \frac{\left(F_{0} / m\right) e^{i \omega t-i \delta}}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \beta^{2} \omega^{2}}}  \tag{3.35}\\
& =\frac{\left(F_{0} / m\right) \sin (\omega t-\delta)}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \beta^{2} \omega^{2}}}
\end{align*}
$$

## Example 3.3: Damped Driven Oscillator

Consider the damped and driven harmonic oscillator worked out above. Given $\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathbf{0}}, \boldsymbol{m}, \boldsymbol{\beta}$ and $\omega_{0}$, solve for the complete solution $x(t)$ for the case where $F=F_{0} \sin \omega t$ with initial conditions $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t}=0)=0$ and $\boldsymbol{v}(\boldsymbol{t}=0)=0$. Assume the underdamped case.
Solution: The general solution including the arbitrary constants includes both the homogenous and particular solutions,

$$
x(t)=\frac{F_{0}}{m} \frac{\sin (\omega t-\delta)}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \beta^{2} \omega^{2}}}+A \cos \omega^{\prime} t e^{-\beta t}+B \sin \omega^{\prime} t e^{-\beta t}
$$

The quantities $\delta$ and $\omega^{\prime}$ are given earlier in the section, $\omega^{\prime}=\sqrt{\omega_{0}^{2}-\beta^{2}}, \delta=$ $\boldsymbol{\operatorname { t a n }}^{-1}\left(2 \beta \omega /\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\boldsymbol{\omega}^{2}\right)\right.$. Here, solving the problem means finding the arbitrary constants $\boldsymbol{A}$ and $\boldsymbol{B}$. Satisfying the initial conditions for the initial position and velocity:

$$
\begin{aligned}
x(t=0)=0 & =-\eta \sin \delta+A \\
v(t=0)=0 & =\omega \eta \cos \delta-\beta A+\omega^{\prime} B \\
\eta & \equiv \frac{F_{0}}{m} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \beta^{2} \omega^{2}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

The problem is now reduced to 2 equations and 2 unknowns, $\boldsymbol{A}$ and $\boldsymbol{B}$. The solution is

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=\eta \sin \delta, \quad B=\frac{-\omega \eta \cos \delta+\beta \eta \sin \delta}{\omega^{\prime}} \tag{3.36}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 3.1: The maximum amplitude squared of the steady-state motion of a sinusoidally driven harmonic oscillator is shown as a function of the driving frequency $\omega$. This peaks near the fundamental frequency $\omega_{0}$ and the full-width-half-maximum, $\boldsymbol{F} \boldsymbol{W} \boldsymbol{H} \boldsymbol{M}$, is given by the damping, $\mathbf{2 \beta}$.

### 3.5 Resonance Widths: the $Q$ factor

From the previous two sections, the particular solution for a driving force, $\boldsymbol{F}=\boldsymbol{F}_{0} \cos \omega \boldsymbol{t}$, is

$$
\begin{align*}
x_{p}(t) & =\frac{F_{0} / m}{\sqrt{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \omega^{2} \beta^{2}}} \cos \left(\omega_{t}-\delta\right)  \tag{3.37}\\
\delta & =\tan ^{-1}\left(\frac{2 \beta \omega}{\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

If one fixes the driving frequency $\omega$ and adjusts the fundamental frequency $\omega_{0}=\sqrt{k / m}$, the maximum amplitude occurs when $\omega_{0}=\omega$ because that is when the term from the denominator $\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \omega^{2} \beta^{2}$ is at a minimum. This is akin to dialing into a radio station. However, if one fixes $\omega_{0}$ and adjusts the driving frequency one minimize with respect to $\omega$, e.g. set

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d \omega}\left[\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \omega^{2} \beta^{2}\right]=0 \tag{3.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

and one finds that the maximum amplitude occurs when $\omega=\sqrt{\omega_{0}^{2}-2 \beta^{2}}$. If $\beta$ is small relative to $\omega_{0}$, one can simply state that the maximum amplitude is

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{\max } \approx \frac{F_{0}}{2 m \beta \omega_{0}} \tag{3.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

Figure 3.1 displays the maximum amplitude squared as a function of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, and one can see the peak at $\boldsymbol{\omega} \approx \boldsymbol{\omega}_{0}$. The squared amplitude is usually more the quantity of interest than the amplitude because the power being absorbed by the oscillator is proportional to the square of the amplitude, not the amplitude. The width of the peak is quantified by the full-width-half-maximum, sometimes called $\boldsymbol{F W} \boldsymbol{H} \boldsymbol{M}$ and can be found by finding the frequency difference, $\omega-\boldsymbol{\omega}_{0}$, such that the maximum response falls by a factor of two,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{4 \omega^{2} \beta^{2}}{\left(\omega_{0}^{2}-\omega^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \omega^{2} \beta^{2}}=\frac{1}{2} \tag{3.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

For small damping this occurs when $\omega=\omega_{0} \pm \boldsymbol{\beta}$, so the $\boldsymbol{F} \boldsymbol{W} \boldsymbol{H} \boldsymbol{M} \approx 2 \boldsymbol{\beta}$. For the purposes of tuning to a specific frequency, one wants the width to be as small as possible. The ratio of $\omega_{0}$ to $\boldsymbol{F} \boldsymbol{W} \boldsymbol{H} \boldsymbol{M}$ is known as the quality factor, or $\boldsymbol{Q}$ factor,

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q \equiv \frac{\omega_{0}}{2 \beta} \tag{3.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 3.6 Principal of Superposition and Periodic Forces (Fourier Transforms)

If one has several driving forces, $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t})=\sum_{n} \boldsymbol{F}_{\boldsymbol{n}}(\boldsymbol{t})$, one can find the particular solution to each $\boldsymbol{F}_{n}, \boldsymbol{x}_{p n}(\boldsymbol{t})$, and the particular solution for the entire driving force is

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{p}(t)=\sum_{n} x_{p n}(t) \tag{3.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is known as the principal of superposition. It only applies when the homogenous equation is linear. If there were an anharmonic term such as $\boldsymbol{x}^{3}$ in the homogenous equation, then when one summed various solutions, $\boldsymbol{x}=\left(\sum_{n} \boldsymbol{x}_{n}\right)^{2}$, one would get cross terms. Superposition is especially useful when $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t})$ can be written as a sum of sinusoidal terms, because the solutions for each sinusoidal term is analytic, and are given in the previous two subsections.
Driving forces are often periodic, even when they are not sinusoidal. Periodicity implies that for some time $\boldsymbol{\tau}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(t+\tau)=F(t) \tag{3.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

One example of a non-sinusoidal periodic force is a square wave. Many components in electric circuits are non-linear, e.g. diodes, which makes many wave forms non-sinusoidal even when the circuits are being driven by purely sinusoidal sources.
For the sinusoidal example studied in the previous subsections the period is $\tau=2 \pi / \omega$. However, higher harmonics can also satisfy the periodicity requirement. In general, any force that satisfies the periodicity requirement can be expressed as a sum over harmonics,

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(t)=\frac{f_{0}}{2}+\sum_{n>0} f_{n} \cos (2 n \pi t / \tau)+g_{n} \sin (2 n \pi t / \tau) \tag{3.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the previous subsection, one can write down the answer for $\boldsymbol{x}_{p n}(t)$, by substituting $f_{n} / \boldsymbol{m}$ or $\boldsymbol{g}_{\boldsymbol{n}} / \boldsymbol{m}$ for $\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathbf{0}} / \boldsymbol{m}$ into Eq.s (3.34) or (3.35) respectively. By writing each factor $\boldsymbol{2} \boldsymbol{n} \boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{t} / \boldsymbol{\tau}$ as $\boldsymbol{n} \boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{t}$, with $\omega \equiv 2 \pi / \tau$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(t)=\frac{f_{0}}{2}+\sum_{n>0} f_{n} \cos (n \omega t)+g_{n} \sin (n \omega t) \tag{3.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

The solutions for $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$ then come from replacing $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ with $\boldsymbol{n} \boldsymbol{\omega}$ for each term in the particular solu-
tion in Eq.s (3.22-3.28),

$$
\begin{align*}
x_{p}(t) & =\frac{f_{0}}{2 k}+\sum_{n>0} \alpha_{n} \cos \left(n \omega t-\delta_{n}\right)+\beta_{n} \sin \left(n \omega t-\delta_{n}\right)  \tag{3.46}\\
\alpha_{n} & =\frac{f_{n} / m}{\sqrt{\left((n \omega)^{2}-\omega_{0}^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \beta^{2} n^{2} \omega^{2}}} \\
\beta_{n} & =\frac{g_{n} / m}{\sqrt{\left((n \omega)^{2}-\omega_{0}^{2}\right)^{2}+4 \beta^{2} n^{2} \omega^{2}}} \\
\delta_{n} & =\tan ^{-1}\left(\frac{2 \beta n \omega}{\omega_{0}^{2}-n^{2} \omega^{2}}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

Because the forces have been applied for a long time, any non-zero damping eliminates the homogenous parts of the solution, so one need only consider the particular solution for each $\boldsymbol{n}$. The problem will considered solved if one can find expressions for the coefficients $f_{n}$ and $\boldsymbol{g}_{n}$, even though the solutions are expressed as an infinite sum. The coefficients can be extracted from the function $F(t)$ by

$$
\begin{align*}
f_{n} & =\frac{2}{\tau} \int_{-\tau / 2}^{\tau / 2} d t F(t) \cos (2 n \pi t / \tau)  \tag{3.47}\\
g_{n} & =\frac{2}{\tau} \int_{-\tau / 2}^{\tau / 2} d t F(t) \sin (2 n \pi t / \tau)
\end{align*}
$$

To check the consistency of these expressions and to verify Eq. (3.47), one can insert the expansion of $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t})$ in Eq. (3.45) into the expression for the coefficients in Eq. (3.47) and see whether

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{n}=? \frac{2}{\tau} \int_{-\tau / 2}^{\tau / 2} d t\left\{\frac{f_{0}}{2}+\sum_{m>0} f_{m} \cos (m \omega t)+g_{m} \sin (m \omega t)\right\} \cos (n \omega t) \tag{3.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

Immediately, one can throw away all the terms with $\boldsymbol{g}_{m}$ because they convolute an even and an odd function. The term with $f_{0} / 2$ disappears because $\cos (\boldsymbol{n} \boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{t})$ is equally positive and negative over the interval and will integrate to zero. For all the terms $f_{m} \cos (\boldsymbol{m} \omega t)$ appearing in the sum, one can use angle addition formulas to see that $\cos (m \omega t) \cos (n \omega t)=(1 / 2)(\cos [(m+n) \omega t]+$ $\cos [(\boldsymbol{m}-\boldsymbol{n}) \boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{t}]$. This will integrate to zero unless $\boldsymbol{m}=\boldsymbol{n}$. In that case the $\boldsymbol{m}=\boldsymbol{n}$ term gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{-\tau / 2}^{\tau / 2} d t \cos ^{2}(m \omega t)=\frac{\tau}{2} \tag{3.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
f_{n} & =? \frac{2}{\tau} \int_{-\tau / 2}^{\tau / 2} d t f_{n} / 2  \tag{3.50}\\
& =f_{n} \checkmark
\end{align*}
$$

The same method can be used to check for the consistency of $\boldsymbol{g}_{\boldsymbol{n}}$.


Figure 3.2: The periodic function $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t})=\boldsymbol{t} / \boldsymbol{\tau},|\boldsymbol{t}|<\tau / \mathbf{2}$ (black) is compared to the Fourier expansion described in Eq. (3.52) with 10 terms (red) or 100 terms (green).

## Example 3.4: Sawtooth Driving Force

Consider the driving force:

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(t)=A t / \tau, \quad-\tau / 2<t<\tau / 2, \quad F(t+\tau)=F(t) \tag{3.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

Find the Fourier coefficients $\boldsymbol{f}_{\boldsymbol{n}}$ and $\boldsymbol{g}_{\boldsymbol{n}}$ for all $\boldsymbol{n}$ using Eq. (3.47).
Solution: Only the odd coefficients enter by symmetry, i.e. $\boldsymbol{f}_{\boldsymbol{n}}=\mathbf{0}$. One can find $\boldsymbol{g}_{\boldsymbol{n}}$ integrating by parts,

$$
\begin{align*}
g_{n} & =\frac{2}{\tau} \int_{-\tau / 2}^{\tau / 2} d t \sin (n \omega t) \frac{A t}{\tau}  \tag{3.52}\\
u & =t, d v=\sin (n \omega t) d t, v=-\cos (n \omega t) /(n \omega) \\
g_{n} & =\frac{-2 A}{n \omega \tau^{2}} \int_{-\tau / 2}^{\tau / 2} d t \cos (n \omega t)+\left.2 A \frac{-t \cos (n \omega t)}{n \omega \tau^{2}}\right|_{-\tau / 2} ^{\tau / 2}
\end{align*}
$$

The first term is zero because $\cos (\boldsymbol{n} \boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{t})$ will be equally positive and negative over the interval. Using the fact that $\omega \tau=2 \pi$,

$$
\begin{align*}
g_{n} & =-\frac{2 A}{2 n \pi} \cos (n \omega \tau / 2)  \tag{3.53}\\
& =-\frac{A}{n \pi} \cos (n \pi) \\
& =\frac{A}{n \pi}(-1)^{n+1}
\end{align*}
$$

The true function is compared to the expansion in Fig. 3.2 where the sum is cut off at finite $\boldsymbol{n}$.

### 3.7 Response to Transient Force

Consider a particle at rest in the bottom of an underdamped harmonic oscillator, that then feels a sudden impulse, or change in momentum, $\boldsymbol{I}=\boldsymbol{F} \boldsymbol{\Delta t}$ at $\boldsymbol{t}=0$. This increases the velocity immediately by an amount $v_{0}=I / m$ while not changing the position. One can then solve the trajectory by solving Eq. (3.17) with initial conditions $v_{0}=I / m$ and $x_{0}=0$. This gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=\frac{I}{m \omega^{\prime}} e^{-\beta t} \sin \omega^{\prime} t, \quad t>0 \tag{3.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, $\omega^{\prime}=\sqrt{\omega_{0}^{2}-\boldsymbol{\beta}^{2}}$. For an impulse $\boldsymbol{I}_{i}$ that occurs at time $\boldsymbol{t}_{i}$ the trajectory would be

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=\frac{I_{i}}{m \omega^{\prime}} e^{-\beta\left(t-t_{i}\right)} \sin \left[\omega^{\prime}\left(t-t_{i}\right)\right] \Theta\left(t-t_{i}\right) \tag{3.55}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Theta\left(t-t_{i}\right)$ is a step function, i.e. $\Theta(x)$ is zero for $x<0$ and unity for $x>0$. If there were several impulses, linear superposition tells us that we can sum over each contribution,

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=\sum_{i} \frac{I_{i}}{m \omega^{\prime}} e^{-\beta\left(t-t_{i}\right)} \sin \left[\omega^{\prime}\left(t-t_{i}\right)\right] \Theta\left(t-t_{i}\right) \tag{3.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now one can consider a series of impulses, $\boldsymbol{I}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$, at times separated by $\boldsymbol{d t}$, where each impulse is given by $\boldsymbol{F}\left(\boldsymbol{t}_{i}\right) d t$. The sum above now becomes an integral,

$$
\begin{align*}
x(t) & =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d t^{\prime} F\left(t^{\prime}\right) \frac{e^{-\beta\left(t-t^{\prime}\right)} \sin \left[\omega^{\prime}\left(t-t^{\prime}\right)\right]}{m \omega^{\prime}} \Theta\left(t-t^{\prime}\right)  \tag{3.57}\\
& =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d t^{\prime} F\left(t^{\prime}\right) G\left(t-t^{\prime}\right) \\
G(\Delta t) & =\frac{e^{-\beta \Delta t} \sin \left[\omega^{\prime} \Delta t\right]}{m \omega^{\prime}} \Theta(\Delta t)
\end{align*}
$$

The quantity $e^{-\beta\left(t-t^{\prime}\right)} \sin \left[\omega^{\prime}\left(t-t^{\prime}\right)\right] / m \omega^{\prime} \Theta\left(t-t^{\prime}\right)$ is called a Green's function, $G\left(t-t^{\prime}\right)$. It describes the response at $t$ due to a force applied at a time $t^{\prime}$, and is a function of $t-t^{\prime}$. The step function ensures that the response does not occur before the force is applied. One should remember that the form for $G$ would change if the oscillator were either critically- or over-damped.
When performing the integral in Eq. (3.57) one can use angle addition formulas to factor out the part with the $t^{\prime}$ dependence in the integrand,

$$
\begin{align*}
x(t) & =\frac{1}{m \omega^{\prime}} e^{-\beta t}\left[I_{c}(t) \sin \left(\omega^{\prime} t\right)-I_{s}(t) \cos \left(\omega^{\prime} t\right)\right]  \tag{3.58}\\
I_{c}(t) & \equiv \int_{-\infty}^{t} d t^{\prime} F\left(t^{\prime}\right) e^{\beta t^{\prime}} \cos \left(\omega^{\prime} t^{\prime}\right) \\
I_{s}(t) & \equiv \int_{-\infty}^{t} d t^{\prime} F\left(t^{\prime}\right) e^{\beta t^{\prime}} \sin \left(\omega^{\prime} t^{\prime}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

If the time $t$ is beyond any time at which the force acts, $\boldsymbol{F}\left(\boldsymbol{t}^{\prime}>\boldsymbol{t}\right)=0$, the coefficients $\boldsymbol{I}_{c}$ and $\boldsymbol{I}_{s}$ become independent of $t$.

## Example 3.5: Gaussian Driving Force

Consider an undamped oscillator $(\beta \rightarrow 0)$, with characteristic frequency $\omega_{0}$ and mass $m$, that is at rest until it feels a force described by a Gaussian form,

$$
F(t)=F_{0} \exp \left\{\frac{-t^{2}}{2 \tau^{2}}\right\}
$$

Find $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$ for large times $(\boldsymbol{t} \gg \boldsymbol{\tau})$, where the force has died off.
Solution: Solve for the coefficients $\boldsymbol{I}_{\boldsymbol{c}}$ and $\boldsymbol{I}_{\boldsymbol{s}}$ in Eq. (3.58). Because the Gaussian is an even function, $\boldsymbol{I}_{s}=0$, and one need only solve for $\boldsymbol{I}_{c}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_{c} & =F_{0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d t^{\prime} e^{-t^{\prime 2} /\left(2 \tau^{2}\right)} \cos \left(\omega_{0} t^{\prime}\right) \\
& =\Re F_{0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d t^{\prime} e^{-t^{\prime 2} /\left(2 \tau^{2}\right)} e^{i \omega_{0} t^{\prime}} \\
& =\Re F_{0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d t^{\prime} e^{-\left(t^{\prime}-i \omega_{0} \tau^{2}\right)^{2} /\left(2 \tau^{2}\right)} e^{-\omega_{0}^{2} \tau^{2} / 2} \\
& =F_{0} \tau \sqrt{2 \pi} e^{-\omega_{0}^{2} \tau^{2} / 2}
\end{aligned}
$$

The third step involved completing the square, and the final step used the fact that the integral

$$
\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d x e^{-x^{2} / 2}=\sqrt{2 \pi}
$$

To see that this integral is true, consider the square of the integral, which you can change to polar coordinates,

$$
\begin{aligned}
I & =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d x e^{-x^{2} / 2} \\
I^{2} & =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d x d y e^{-\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right) / 2} \\
& =2 \pi \int_{0}^{\infty} r d r e^{-r^{2} / 2} \\
& =2 \pi
\end{aligned}
$$

Finally, the expression for $\boldsymbol{x}$ from Eq. (3.58) is

$$
x(t \gg \tau)=\frac{F_{0} \tau}{m \omega_{0}} \sqrt{2 \pi} e^{-\omega_{0}^{2} \tau^{2} / 2} \sin \left(\omega_{0} t\right)
$$

### 3.8 Solving Equations of Motion Numerically

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{n}=x(n \Delta t) \tag{3.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

Assume that one knows $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{n}}$ for all $\boldsymbol{i}<\leq \boldsymbol{j}$. One can express the velocities and accelerations in

Newton's equations of motion for a mass $m$ as:

$$
\begin{align*}
v_{n} & =\frac{x_{n+1}-x_{n-1}}{2 \Delta t}  \tag{3.60}\\
a_{n} & =\frac{v_{n+1 / 2}-v_{n-1 / 2}}{\Delta t} \\
& =\frac{x_{n+1}-2 x_{n}+x_{n-1}}{(\Delta t)^{2}}
\end{align*}
$$

The equations of motion at $t_{n}=n \Delta t$ become

$$
\begin{equation*}
F\left(x_{n}\right)=m a_{n} \tag{3.61}
\end{equation*}
$$

If one knows $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{n - 1}}$ and $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{n}}$ the only unknown in the equation is $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{n + 1}}$. One can solve for it , then move onto the next $\boldsymbol{n}$. Note that to proceed one needs to know $\boldsymbol{x}$ at two points. This can be tricky depending on how the initial conditions are specified.

## Example 3.6: Calculating Trajectory Numerically

Write a numerical program to solve the evolution of a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ feeling a spring force, $-\boldsymbol{k} \boldsymbol{x}$ and a drag force, $\boldsymbol{- b v}$. Assume there is also some external force, $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t})=\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathbf{0}} \sin \omega \boldsymbol{t}$. Let the initial conditions be $x(t=0)=0$ and $v(t=0)=v_{0}$.
Solution: The differential equation,

$$
m \ddot{x}+b \dot{x}+k x=0
$$

## becomes

$$
\frac{m}{(\Delta t)^{2}}\left(x_{n+1}-2 x_{n}+x_{n-1}\right)+\frac{b}{2 \Delta t}\left(x_{n+1}-x_{n-1}\right)+k x_{n}=F(n \Delta t)
$$

Solving for $x_{n+1}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\{\frac{m}{(\Delta t)^{2}}+\frac{b}{2 \Delta t}\right\} x_{n+1} & =\left[\frac{2 m}{(\Delta t)^{2}}-k\right] x_{n}+F(n \Delta t)+\left[-\frac{m}{(\Delta t)^{2}}+\frac{b}{2 \Delta t}\right] x_{n-1} \\
x_{n+1} & =\frac{\left[\frac{2 m}{(\Delta t)^{2}}-k\right] x_{n}+F(n \Delta t)+\left[-\frac{m}{(\Delta t)^{2}}+\frac{b}{2 \Delta t}\right] x_{n-1}}{\frac{m}{(\Delta t)^{2}}+\frac{b}{2 \Delta t}} \\
& =\frac{\left[2-\omega_{0}^{2}(\Delta t)^{2}\right] x_{n}+(F(n \Delta t) / m)(\Delta t)^{2}-[1-\beta \Delta t] x_{n-1}}{1+\beta \Delta t}
\end{aligned}
$$

In order to iterate forward to find $\boldsymbol{x}_{n+1}$, one must know $\boldsymbol{x}_{n-1}$ and $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{n}}$. However, to get started, one only knows one value of $\boldsymbol{x}$, along with the velocity being zero. To get $\boldsymbol{x}$ at two time steps, one must can use the above two pieces of information,

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{0} & =\frac{x_{1}-x_{-1}}{2 \Delta t} \\
-b v_{0}-k x_{0} & =m \frac{x_{1}-2 x_{0}+x_{-1}}{\Delta t^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

then combine the equations to eliminate $\boldsymbol{x}_{-1}$ to solve for $\boldsymbol{x}_{1}$. The fact that $\boldsymbol{x}_{0}=0$ makes the algebra simpler,

$$
x_{1}=v_{0} \Delta t-\frac{b v_{0} \Delta t^{2}}{2 m}
$$

The program might read: (Question marks would be replaced by the given parameters of the problem.)

```
double F(double t){
    double FO=????,omega=????;
    return F0*sin(omega*t);
}
void main(){
    const int Ntsteps=???;
    double x[Ntsteps+1],dt=???,k=???,m=???,b=???,v0=???;
    x[0] = 0.0;
    x[1] = v0*dt-0.5*b*v0/m;
    for(int it=1;it<Ntsteps;it=it+1){
        x[it+1]=( (2.0*m/(dt*dt)) -k)*x[it] + F(it*dt)
        + (0.5*b/dt)*x[it-1] ) / ( (m/(dt*dt) + 0.5*b/dt );
    }
}
```


### 3.9 Exercises

1. A floating body of uniform cross-sectional area $\boldsymbol{A}$ and of mass density $\rho$ and at equilibrium displaces a volume $\boldsymbol{V}$. Show that the period of small oscillations about the equilibrium position is given by

$$
\tau=2 \pi \sqrt{V / g A}
$$

2. Show that the critically damped solution, Eq. (3.18), is indeed the solution to the differential equation.
3. Consider an over-damped harmonic oscillator with a mass of $m=2 \mathrm{~kg}$, a damping factor $b=20 \mathrm{Ns} / \mathrm{m}$, and a spring constant $\boldsymbol{k}=32 \mathrm{~N} / \mathrm{m}$. If the initial position is $\boldsymbol{x}=\mathbf{0 . 1 2 5}$ m , and if the initial velocity is $-2.0 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}$, find and graph the motion as a function of time. Graphically, find the time at which the mass crosses the origin.
4. Consider a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ moving in a one-dimensional potential,

$$
V(x)=-k \frac{x^{2}}{2}+\alpha \frac{x^{4}}{4}
$$

(a) What is the angular frequency for small vibrations about the minimum of the potential? What is the effective spring constant?
(b) If you add a small force $\boldsymbol{F}=\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathbf{0}} \cos (\omega t-\phi)$, and if the particle is initially at the minimum with zero initial velocity, find its position as a function of time.
(c) If there is a small drag force $-\boldsymbol{b} \boldsymbol{v}$, repeat (b).
5. Consider the periodic force, $\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t}+\boldsymbol{\tau})=\boldsymbol{F}(\boldsymbol{t})$,

$$
F(t)= \begin{cases}-A, & -\tau / 2<t<0 \\ +A, & 0<t<\tau / 2\end{cases}
$$

Find the coefficients $\boldsymbol{f}_{\boldsymbol{n}}$ and $\boldsymbol{g}_{\boldsymbol{n}}$ defined in Eq. (3.47).
6. A "delta" function is a function that is zero everywhere except where the argument is zero. At this point the function is infinite so that the area under the curve is unity. The delta function obeys the relations

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{a}^{b} d t^{\prime} \delta\left(t^{\prime}-t_{0}\right) & =1 \\
\int_{a}^{b} d t^{\prime} f\left(t^{\prime}\right) \delta\left(t^{\prime}-t_{0}\right) & =f\left(t_{0}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

as long as the time $t_{0}$ lies between the limits $\boldsymbol{a}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}$. Otherwise, the integrals are zero.
(a) Show that the following function

$$
\left.\frac{1}{\pi} \frac{\Lambda}{\Lambda^{2}+x^{2}}\right|_{\Lambda \rightarrow 0}=\delta(x)
$$

i.e. show that it is zero everywhere except the origin and that it integrates to unity.
(b) A step function, $\Theta(t)$, a.k.a. the "Theta" function or the Heaviside function, is zero for negative arguments and is unity for positive arguments. Show that

$$
\frac{d}{d x} \Theta\left(x-x_{0}\right)=\delta\left(x-x_{0}\right)
$$

(c) Using the definition of Fourier coefficients in Eq.s (3.45) and (3.47), show that

$$
\delta\left(t-t_{0}\right)=-\frac{1}{\tau}+\frac{2}{\tau} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \cos \left(\omega_{n}\left(t-t_{0}\right)\right), \quad \omega_{n}=2 n \pi / \tau
$$

7. Consider the complex function in the interval $-\tau / 2<t<\tau / 2$,

$$
f(t)=-\frac{1}{\tau}+\frac{2}{\tau} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} e^{i n \omega\left(t-t_{0}\right)}, \quad \omega=2 \pi / \tau
$$

(a) Using the fact that if one integrates over the interval, $-\tau / 2<t<\tau / 2$, that $\int d t e^{i n \omega t}=$ 0 for $\boldsymbol{n} \neq 0$, show that

$$
\int d t f(t)=1
$$

(b) Using the fact that $\sum_{n} x^{n}=1 /(1-x)$, show that

$$
f(t)=-\frac{1}{\tau}+\frac{2 / \tau}{1-e^{i \omega\left(t-t_{0}\right)}}
$$

(c) From the expression in (b), show that the real part of $f(t)$ obeys

$$
\Re f(t)=0, \text { for } t \neq t_{0}
$$

This shows that $\Re f$ is a delta function and validates the result of the previous problem.
8. A particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ in an undamped harmonic oscillator with angular frequency $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{0}$ is at rest in the bottom of the well, when it experiences a force

$$
F(t)=\left\{\begin{array}{cl}
0, & t<0 \\
G, & 0<t<\tau \\
0, & t>\tau
\end{array}\right.
$$

Find $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$ for $\boldsymbol{t}>\boldsymbol{\tau}$ using Eq. (3.58).
9. Consider a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ in a harmonic oscillator with angular frequency $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{0}$ and no damping. It experiences an external force,

$$
\boldsymbol{F}(t)=f_{0} \Theta(t) e^{-\gamma t}
$$

A "Theta" function is a step function, and is zero for negative arguments and unity for positive arguments.
(a) Find a particular solution, $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{p}}(\boldsymbol{t})$, assuming it is proportional to $\boldsymbol{e}^{-\gamma t}$.
(b) For a particle initially at rest at the origin at $t=0$, find $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$ by adding in the homogenous solutions and matching the BC, determine the arbitrary constants.
(c) Use Eq. (3.57) or Eq. (3.58) to find $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{t})$. Check that you get the same result as (b).

## 4 Gravity and Central Forces

### 4.1 Gravity

The gravitational potential energy and forces involving two masses $\boldsymbol{a}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}$ are

$$
\begin{align*}
U_{a b} & =-\frac{G m_{a} m_{b}}{\left|\vec{r}_{a}-\vec{r}_{b}\right|}  \tag{4.1}\\
F_{b a} & =-\frac{G m_{a} m_{b}}{\left|\vec{r}_{a}-\vec{r}_{b}\right|^{2}} \hat{r}_{a b} \\
\hat{r}_{a b} & =\frac{\vec{r}_{b}-\vec{r}_{a}}{\left|\vec{r}_{a}-\vec{r}_{b}\right|}
\end{align*}
$$

Here $\boldsymbol{G}=6.67 \times 10^{-11} \mathrm{Nm}^{2} / \mathrm{kg}^{2}$, and $\boldsymbol{F}_{b a}$ is the force on $\boldsymbol{b}$ due to $\boldsymbol{a}$. By inspection, one can see that the force on $\boldsymbol{b}$ due to $\boldsymbol{a}$ and the force on $\boldsymbol{a}$ due to $\boldsymbol{b}$ are equal and opposite. The net potential energy for a large number of masses would be

$$
\begin{equation*}
U=\sum_{a<b} U_{a b}=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{a \neq b} U_{a b} \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Just like electrodynamics, one can define "fields", which for a small additional mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ are the force per mass and the additional potential energy per mass. The gravitational field related to the force has dimensions of force per mass, or acceleration, and can be labeled $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{g}}(\vec{r})$. This is analogous to the electric field, which is the force per charge. The potential energy per mass has dimensions of energy per mass, but is not typically given a name. It would be analogous to the electromagnetic potential, which is the potential energy per charge.
Because the field $\boldsymbol{g}$ obeys the same inverse square law for a point mass as the electric field does for a point charge, the gravitational field also satisfies a version of Gauss's law,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\oint d \vec{A} \cdot \vec{g}=-4 \pi G M_{\mathrm{inside}} \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, $\boldsymbol{M}_{\text {inside }}$ is the net mass inside a closed area.
Gauss's law can be understood geometrically by considering a nozzle that sprays paint in all directions uniformly from a point source. Let $\boldsymbol{B}$ be the number of liters per minute of paint leaving the nozzle. If the nozzle is at the center of a sphere of radius $r$, the paint per square meter per minute that is deposited on some part of the sphere is

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(r)=\frac{B}{4 \pi r^{2}} \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, let $\boldsymbol{F}$ also be assigned a direction, so that it becomes a vector pointing along the direction of the flying paint. For any surface that surrounds the nozzle, not necessarily a sphere, one can state that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\oint \overrightarrow{d A} \cdot \vec{F}=B \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

regardless of the shape of the surface. This follows because the rate at which paint is deposited on the surface should equal the rate at which it leaves the nozzle. The dot product ensures that only the component of $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}$ into the surface contributes to the deposition of paint. Similarly, if $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}$ is any radial inverse-square form, such that $\boldsymbol{F}$ falls as $\boldsymbol{B} /\left(4 \pi r^{2}\right)$, then one can apply Eq. (4.5). For gravitational fields, $B /(4 \pi)$ is replaced by $\boldsymbol{G M}$, and one quickly "derives" Gauss's law for gravity, Eq. (4.3).
In electromagnetism texts, Gauss's law is derived more formally. In that case, one begins with one of Maxwell's equations,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla \cdot \vec{E}=4 \pi \rho \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

then one applies the divergence theorem, also known as Gauss's theorem,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int d^{3} r \nabla \cdot \vec{V}=\oint d \vec{A} \cdot \vec{V} \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

For electromagnetism this give

$$
\begin{align*}
\oint d \vec{A} \cdot \vec{E} & =4 \pi Q  \tag{4.8}\\
Q & =\int d^{3} r \rho(\vec{r}) \tag{4.9}
\end{align*}
$$

For gravity, the equivalent to the Maxwell equation would be

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla \cdot \vec{g}(\vec{r})=-4 \pi G \rho_{m}(\vec{r}) \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\rho_{m}$ is the mass density.

## Example 4.1: Relating Force to Mass Density

Suppose that somebody has measured the gravitational acceleration somewhere in the universe. Their result was

$$
\vec{g}(\vec{r})=g_{0} \exp \left\{-\frac{x^{2}}{2 R_{x}^{2}}\right\} \hat{x}+g_{0} \exp \left\{-\frac{y^{2}}{2 R_{y}^{2}}\right\} \hat{y}
$$

where $g_{0}$ is positive.
a) What is the mass density?
b) Is this physical?

## Solution:

a) Using Eq. (4.10),

$$
\begin{aligned}
\nabla \cdot \vec{g} & =-4 \pi G \rho_{m}(\vec{r}) \\
\partial_{x} g_{x}+\partial_{y} g_{y} & =-4 \pi G \rho_{m}(\vec{r}) \\
-\frac{g_{0} x}{R_{x}^{2}} e^{-\frac{x^{2}}{2 R_{x}^{2}}}-\frac{g_{0} y}{R_{y}^{2}} e^{-\frac{y^{2}}{2 R_{y}^{2}}} & =-4 \pi G \rho_{m}(\vec{r}), \\
\rho_{m}(\vec{r}) & =\frac{g_{0}}{4 \pi G}\left\{\frac{x}{R_{x}^{2}} e^{-\frac{x^{2}}{2 R_{x}^{2}}}+\frac{y}{R_{y}^{2}} e^{-\frac{y^{2}}{2 R_{y}^{2}}}\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

b) NO!!! Mass densities must be positive!

## Example 4.2: Gravitational Force Inside Earth

Consider Earth to have its mass $\boldsymbol{M}$ uniformly distributed in a sphere of radius $\boldsymbol{R}$. Find the magnitude of the gravitational acceleration as a function of the radius $r$ in terms of the acceleration of gravity at the surface $\boldsymbol{g}(\boldsymbol{R})$. Assume $\boldsymbol{r}<\boldsymbol{R}$, i.e. you are inside the surface.
Solution: Take the ratio of Eq. (4.3) for two radii, $\boldsymbol{R}$ and $\boldsymbol{r}<\boldsymbol{R}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{4 \pi r^{2} g(r)}{4 \pi R^{2} g(R)} & =\frac{4 \pi G M_{\text {inside } \mathrm{r}}}{4 \pi G M_{\mathrm{inside} \mathrm{R}}} \\
& =\frac{r^{3}}{R^{3}} \\
g(r) & =g(R) \frac{r}{R}
\end{aligned}
$$

If one were to build a tunnel from one end of Earth to the other, the mass would oscillate back and forth like a mass on a spring. In reality the interior is not of uniform density, and the gravitational field on the surface varies due to rotation (which makes Earth bulge at the equator), local elevation, and the composition (e.g. rock vs water) of the nearby material.


Variation of Earth's gravitational field from GRACE (Gravity Recovery and Climate Experiment). See https://en.wikipedia.org /wiki/Gravity_anomaly

### 4.2 Tidal Forces

Before discussing tidal forces, we discuss the effective force on feels in an accelerating frame. If a particle is observed in an inertial reference frame, which we will denote with a prime, Newton's
third law applies

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{d^{2} \vec{r}^{\prime}}{d t^{2}}=\vec{F} \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, if we have a second coordinate system,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{r}=\vec{r}^{\prime}-\vec{r}_{0}, \quad \overrightarrow{r_{0}}=\frac{1}{2} \vec{a}_{0} t^{2} \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

We would see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{d^{2} \vec{r}}{d t^{2}}=\vec{F}-m \vec{a}_{0} \tag{4.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{a}}_{0}$ is the acceleration of the coordinate system. The last term acts like an additional apparent force. In fact, it acts like a contribution to the gravitational force which alters the acceleration of gravity by $\boldsymbol{\delta} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{g}}=-\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{a}}_{0}$. For example, if somebody is in a car with acceleration $\boldsymbol{a} \hat{\boldsymbol{x}}$, an observer in the frame of the car would not see their position changing relative to the seat. That observer would think they had zero acceleration, but they would feel as if a gravitational type force was pushing them back in the seat, opposite to the car's acceleration.
Now, consider a spherical planet of radius $\boldsymbol{r}$ a distance $\boldsymbol{D}$ from another body of mass $\boldsymbol{M}$. The magnitude of the force due to $M$ on an small object of mass $\delta m$ on surface of the planet can be calculated by performing a Taylor expansion about the center of the spherical planet.

$$
\begin{equation*}
F=-\frac{G M \delta m}{D^{2}}+2 \frac{G M \delta m}{D^{3}} \Delta D+\cdots \tag{4.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the $z$ direction points toward the large object, $\Delta D$ can be referred to as $z$. If $z^{\prime}$ is defined in the accelerating frame of an observer moving with the center of the planet,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta m \frac{d^{2} z^{\prime}}{d t^{2}}=F-\delta m A \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, $\boldsymbol{A}$ is the acceleration of the observer moving with the center of the planet. Because $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{m} \boldsymbol{A}$ equals the gravitational force on $\delta m$ if it were located at the planet's center, one finds a cancellation between the term from the accelerating frame and the term representing the external force evaluated at the planets center. One can then write

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{d^{2} z^{\prime}}{d t^{2}}=2 \frac{G M \delta m}{D^{3}} z+\text { other forces acting on } \delta m \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here the "other" forces could represent the forces acting on $\delta \boldsymbol{m}$ from the spherical planet such as the gravitational force due to the planet (not the distant body) and the normal force with the surface. If $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ is the angle w.r.t. the $\boldsymbol{z}$ axis, the effective force acting on $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{m}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{F}_{\mathrm{eff}} \approx 2 \frac{G M \delta m}{D^{3}} r \cos \theta \hat{z}+\text { other forces acting on } \delta m \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

This first force is the "tidal" force. If $\delta \boldsymbol{m}$ is located on the side of the planet facing the distant object, $\theta=0$ and $\cos \theta=1$, the force is in the $\hat{z}$ directions, towards the distant object. If $\delta m$ were located on the opposite side of the planet, $\cos \theta=-1$ and the effective force is pushing
away from the planet. In both locations $\boldsymbol{F}_{\text {eff }}$ pulls objects outward from the center of the object. If the object were covered with water, it would pull the water on the surface of the planet outwards in these directions and distort the planet's shape. The shape would be elliptical, stretched out along the axis pointing toward the large mass $M$. The force is always along (either parallel or antiparallel to) the $\hat{z}$ direction i.e. the direction pointing toward the distant body. Thus, high tide occurs twice per day as Earth undergoes a rotation, once when the distant object is overhead, and once when it is overhead to an observer on the opposite side of the planet.

## Example 4.3: Tidal Distortion

- Consider the Earth to be a sphere of radius $\boldsymbol{R}$ covered with water, with the gravitational acceleration at the surface noted by $\boldsymbol{g}$. Now assume that a distant body provides an additional constant gravitational acceleration $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{a}}$ pointed along the $z$ axis. Find the distortion of the radius as a function of $\boldsymbol{\theta}$. Ignore planetary rotation and assume $\boldsymbol{a} \ll \boldsymbol{g}$.
Solution: Because Earth would then accelerate with $\vec{a}$, the field $\vec{a}$ would seem invisible in the accelerating frame. To see this consider the forces fell by an object of mass $\delta m$ on the surface,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta m \frac{d^{2} \vec{r}}{d t^{2}}=\vec{F}_{\text {other }}+\delta m \vec{a} \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{\text {other }}$ are all other forces acting on $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{m}$, including any gravitational forces from the planet. If one described the postion in the acclerating frame,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{r}^{\prime}=\vec{r}-\frac{1}{2} \vec{a} t^{2} \tag{4.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

the equations of motion for $\vec{r}^{\prime}$ would be

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} \vec{r}^{\prime}}{d t^{2}}=\vec{F}_{\text {other }} / \delta m \tag{4.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, nothing in the primed frame would behave any differently that in the un-primed frame if the constant external field didn't exist. Thus, there is no incentive for the planet's surface to deform.

- Now consider that the field is no longer constant, but that instead it varies linearly with $\boldsymbol{z}$, i.e. $\vec{a}=k z \hat{z}$ with $|\boldsymbol{k R}| \ll \boldsymbol{g}$.
Solution: The surface of the planet needs to be at constant potential (if the planet is not accelerating). The force per mass, $-k z$ is like a spring, and the potential per mass is $k z^{2} / 2$. Otherwise water would move to a point of lower potential. Thus, the potential energy for a sample mass $\delta m$ is

$$
\begin{aligned}
V(R)+\delta m g h(\theta)-\frac{\delta m}{2} k r^{2} \cos ^{2} \theta & =\text { Constant } \\
V(R)+\delta m g h(\theta)-\frac{\delta m}{2} k R^{2} \cos ^{2} \theta-\delta m k R h(\theta) \cos ^{2} \theta & \\
-\frac{\delta m}{2} k h^{2}(\theta) \cos ^{2} \theta & =\text { Constant. }
\end{aligned}
$$

where the distance from the center of the planet is $\boldsymbol{r}=\boldsymbol{R}+\boldsymbol{h}$, and the potential due to the external field is $(\mathbf{1} / 2) k z^{2}$ so that $-\nabla U=-k z$. One now needs to solve for $h(\theta)$. Absorbing all the constant terms from both sides of the equation into one constant $C$, and because both $\boldsymbol{h}$ and $\boldsymbol{k} \boldsymbol{R}$ are small, we can through away terms of order $\boldsymbol{h}^{2}$ or $\boldsymbol{k} \boldsymbol{R} \boldsymbol{h}$. This gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
g h(\theta)-\frac{1}{2} k R^{2} \cos ^{2} \theta & =C \\
h(\theta) & =\frac{C}{g}+\frac{1}{2 g} k R^{2} \cos ^{2} \theta \\
h(\theta) & =\frac{1}{2 g} k R^{2}\left(\cos ^{2} \theta-1 / 3\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The term with the factor of $1 / 3$ replaced the constant and was chosen so that the average height of the water would be zero.

## Example 4.4: Tidal Forces of Moon and Sun

The Sun's mass is $27 \times 10^{6}$ the Moon's mass, but the Sun is 390 times further away from Earth as the Sun. What is ratio of the tidal force of the Sun to that of the Moon.
Solution: The gravitational force due to an object $\boldsymbol{M}$ a distance $\boldsymbol{D}$ away goes as $\boldsymbol{M} / \boldsymbol{D}^{2}$, but the tidal force is only the difference of that force over a distance $\boldsymbol{R}$,

$$
F_{\text {tidal }} \propto \frac{M}{D^{3}} R
$$

Therefore the ratio of force is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{F_{\text {Sun's tidal force }}}{F_{\text {Moon's tidal force }}} & =\frac{M_{\text {sun }} / D_{\text {sun }}^{3}}{M_{\text {moon }} / D_{\text {moon }}^{3}} \\
& =\frac{27 \times 10^{6}}{390^{3}}=0.46
\end{aligned}
$$

The Moon more strongly affects tides than the Sun.

### 4.3 Deriving Kepler's Laws

Nicolaus Copernicus proposed the heliocentric model of planetary orbits in 1514, which was based on circular orbits. However, by 1515 Copernicus had already made the first detailed observations of the eccentricity of Earth's orbit, showing that it was not perfectly circular. It was not until the turn of the next century, that Johannes Kepler in 1604, inspired by the detailed observations of Tycho Brahe, proposed that orbits were elliptical in first of his three laws of planetary motion. The first telescopes appeared shortly thereafter, and were greatly improved in the coming decades, most famously by Christiaan Huygens. But, despite all this data and empirical formulation, there was not yet any connection between astronomical behavior and gravitational force. Isaac Newton was the first theorize that a gravitational force was responsi-
ble for such behavior, which was classified by many as an occult idea because it involved action at a distance, across a vacuum. Newton not only suggested the inverse-square law force, but also showed mathematically that it would explain Kepler's Laws. This derivation was all the more amazing as it required fairly advanced calculus, which Newton needed to first invent. From the publication of Copernicus's thesis in 1514 to Newton's publication of Principia in 1687, 173 years passed, with several decades often passing before the next major advance. The imagination and genius of these accomplishments cannot be over-stated. Brahe's observations were performed without telescopes, and Kepler's initial calculations were performed before decimal points were employed. Higher level mathematics, such as calculus and differential equations, was not applied to physics in any way, because the tools did not yet exist. In fact, the notion of describing nature in mathematical, rather than Aristotelian, terms was a revolutionary concept, being championed by Galileo Gallilei at the end of the $16^{\text {th }}$ century. The goal of this section is to present the derivation, in terms of calculus, showing how attractive inverse-square-law forces lead to Kepler's laws.
Kepler's laws extend Copernicus's circular orbits to include elliptical orbits. The three laws are:

1. The orbit of a planet is an ellipse with the Sun at one of the two foci.
2. A line segment joining a planet and the Sun sweeps out equal areas during equal intervals of time.
3. The square of a planet's orbital period is proportional to the cube of the length of the semimajor axis of its orbit.

Kepler's first law state that a gravitational orbit should be an ellipse with the source of the gravitational field at one focus. Deriving this is surprisingly messy. To do this, we first use angular momentum conservation to transform the equations of motion so that it is in terms of $\boldsymbol{r}$ and $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ instead of $\boldsymbol{r}$ and $\boldsymbol{t}$. The overall strategy is to

1. Find equations of motion for $r$ and $t$ with no angle $(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ mentioned, i.e. $\boldsymbol{d}^{2} \boldsymbol{r} / \boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{t}^{2}=\cdots$. Angular momentum conservation will be used, and the equation will involve the angular momentum $L$.
2. Use angular momentum conservation to find an expression for $\dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{r}$.
3. Use the chain rule to convert the equations of motions for $r$, an expression involving $r, \dot{r}$ and $\ddot{\boldsymbol{r}}$, to one involving $r, \boldsymbol{d r} / \boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{\theta}$ and $\boldsymbol{d}^{2} r / \boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{\theta}^{2}$. This is quite complicated because the expressions will also involve a substitution $u=1 / r$ so that one finds an expression in terms of $\boldsymbol{u}$ and $\boldsymbol{\theta}$.
4. Once $\boldsymbol{u}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ is found, you need to show that this can be converted to the familiar form for an ellipse.

Our goal is to find expressions for $\ddot{\boldsymbol{r}}$, where $\boldsymbol{r}$ is the radius. We want the expressions to involve only $\boldsymbol{r}, \boldsymbol{\theta}$ and the time derivatives. We are accustomed to the usual equations for $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ddot{\boldsymbol{x}}=\boldsymbol{F}_{x} / \boldsymbol{m}, \ddot{\boldsymbol{y}}=\boldsymbol{F}_{y} / \boldsymbol{m} \tag{4.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, we express $\boldsymbol{r}$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$, then take derivatives to find $\ddot{\boldsymbol{r}}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
r & =\sqrt{x^{2}+y^{2}}  \tag{4.22}\\
\dot{r} & =\left(\partial_{x} r\right) \dot{x}+\left(\partial_{y} r\right) \dot{y} \\
& =\frac{x \dot{x}}{r}+\frac{y \dot{y}}{r} . \\
\ddot{r} & =\frac{x}{r} \ddot{x}+\frac{y}{r} \ddot{y}+\frac{\dot{x}^{2}+\dot{y}^{2}}{r}-\frac{\dot{r}^{2}}{r} .
\end{align*}
$$

Next, replace $\boldsymbol{x} / \boldsymbol{r}$ with $\cos \boldsymbol{\theta}$ and $\boldsymbol{y} / \boldsymbol{r}$ with $\sin \boldsymbol{\theta}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\ddot{r} & =\ddot{x} \cos \theta+\ddot{y} \sin \theta+\frac{\dot{x}^{2}+\dot{y}^{2}}{r}-\frac{\dot{r}^{2}}{r}  \tag{4.23}\\
& =\frac{F_{r}}{m}+\frac{\dot{x}^{2}+\dot{y}^{2}}{r}-\frac{\dot{r}^{2}}{r}
\end{align*}
$$

where we have recognized the first two terms of the expression as representing the magnitude of the radial force, which in our case will depend only on $r$. Finally, one notes that the squared velocity is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{x}^{2}+\dot{y}^{2}=v^{2}=\dot{r}^{2}+r^{2} \dot{\theta}^{2} \tag{4.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, we have made use of the fact that $\boldsymbol{v}^{2}$ is a combination of the radial velocity, $\dot{r}$ and the tangential velocity, $\boldsymbol{r} \dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$. This gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\ddot{r}=\frac{F_{r}}{m}+\frac{r^{2} \dot{\theta}^{2}}{r} \tag{4.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Finally, one can replace the term with $\dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^{2}$ by identifying the angular momentum,

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=m r^{2} \dot{\theta} \tag{4.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

This give the

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \ddot{r}=F_{r}+\frac{L^{2}}{m r^{3}} \tag{4.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, the only assumption made is that the force is radial. This also implies that angular momentum is conserved. Thus for a given trajectory, $L$ can be treated like a constant. This means that for the evolution of the radius, ignoring how $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ depends on time, one can describe the radial motion as a simple one-dimensional problem, but with an extra force, $L^{2} / \boldsymbol{m} r^{3}$. Sometimes this is referred to as a centrifugal force, but it is not a force. Instead, it is the consequence of considering the motion in a rotating (and therefore accelerating) frame.
Now, we switch to the particular case of an attractive inverse square force, $\boldsymbol{F}=-\boldsymbol{\alpha} / \boldsymbol{r}^{2}$, and show that the trajectory, $\boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$, is an ellipse. To do this we transform derivatives w.r.t. time
to derivatives w.r.t. $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ using the chain rule combined with angular momentum conservation, $\dot{\theta}=L / m r^{2}$.

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{r} & =\frac{d r}{d \theta} \dot{\theta}=\frac{d r}{d \theta} \frac{L}{m r^{2}}  \tag{4.29}\\
\ddot{r} & =\frac{d^{2} r}{d \theta^{2}} \dot{\theta}^{2}+\frac{d r}{d \theta}\left(\frac{d}{d r} \frac{L}{m r^{2}}\right) \dot{r} \\
& =\frac{d^{2} r}{d \theta^{2}}\left(\frac{L}{m r^{2}}\right)^{2}-2 \frac{d r}{d \theta} \frac{L}{m r^{3}} \dot{r} \\
& =\frac{d^{2} r}{d \theta^{2}}\left(\frac{L}{m r^{2}}\right)^{2}-\frac{2}{r}\left(\frac{d r}{d \theta}\right)^{2}\left(\frac{L}{m r^{2}}\right)^{2}
\end{align*}
$$

Equating the two expressions for $\ddot{r}$ in Eq.s (4.25) and (4.29) eliminates all the derivatives w.r.t. time, and provides a differential equation with only derivatives w.r.t. $\boldsymbol{\theta}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} r}{d \theta^{2}}\left(\frac{L}{m r^{2}}\right)^{2}-\frac{2}{r}\left(\frac{d r}{d \theta}\right)^{2}\left(\frac{L}{m r^{2}}\right)^{2}=\frac{F}{m}+\frac{L^{2}}{m^{2} r^{3}} \tag{4.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

that when solved yields the trajectory, i.e. $\boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$. Up to this point the expressions work for any radial force, not just forces that fall as $1 / r^{2}$.
The trick to simplifying this differential equation for the inverse square problems is to make a substitution, $u \equiv 1 / r$, and rewrite the differential equation for $u(\theta)$.

$$
\begin{align*}
r & =1 / u  \tag{4.31}\\
\frac{d r}{d \theta} & =-\frac{1}{u^{2}} \frac{d u}{d \theta} \\
\frac{d^{2} r}{d \theta^{2}} & =\frac{2}{u^{3}}\left(\frac{d u}{d \theta}\right)^{2}-\frac{1}{u^{2}} \frac{d^{2} u}{d \theta^{2}}
\end{align*}
$$

Plugging these expressions into Eq. (4.30) gives an expression in terms of $\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{u} / \boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{\theta}$, and $\boldsymbol{d}^{\mathbf{2}} \boldsymbol{u} / \boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{\theta}^{\mathbf{2}}$. After some tedious algebra,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} u}{d \theta^{2}}=-u-\frac{F m}{L^{2} u^{2}} \tag{4.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

For the attractive inverse square law force, $\boldsymbol{F}=-\boldsymbol{\alpha} \boldsymbol{u}^{2}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} u}{d \theta^{2}}=-u+\frac{m \alpha}{L^{2}} \tag{4.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

The solution has two arbitrary constants, $\boldsymbol{A}$ and $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{0}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
u & =\frac{m \alpha}{L^{2}}+A \cos \left(\theta-\theta_{0}\right)  \tag{4.34}\\
r & =\frac{1}{\left(m \alpha / L^{2}\right)+A \cos \left(\theta-\theta_{0}\right)}
\end{align*}
$$

The radius will be at a minimum when $\boldsymbol{\theta}=\boldsymbol{\theta}_{0}$ and at a maximum when $\boldsymbol{\theta}=\boldsymbol{\theta}_{0}+\boldsymbol{\pi}$. The constant $\boldsymbol{A}$ is related to the eccentricity of the orbit. When $\boldsymbol{A}=\mathbf{0}$ the radius is a constant $r=L^{2} /(\boldsymbol{m} \boldsymbol{\alpha})$,


Figure 4.1: An ellipse with principle axes of lengths 25 and 15. For orbits, the center-of-mass is at one of the foci.
and the motion is circular. If one solved the expression $\boldsymbol{m} \boldsymbol{v}^{2} / r=-\alpha / r^{2}$ for a circular orbit, using the substitution $v=L /(m r)$, one would reproduce the expression $r=L^{2} /(m \alpha)$.
The form describing the elliptical trajectory in Eq. (4.34) can be identified as a true ellipse with one focus being the center of the ellipse by considering the definition of an ellipse as being the points such that the sum of the two distances between the two foci are a constant, as illustrated in Fig 4.1. Making that distance $2 a$, the distance between the two foci as $2 c$, and putting one focus at the origin,

$$
\begin{align*}
2 a & =r+\sqrt{(r \cos \theta-2 c)^{2}+r^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta}  \tag{4.35}\\
4 a^{2}+r^{2}-4 a r & =r^{2}+4 a^{2}-4 c r \cos \theta \\
r & =\frac{a^{2}-c^{2}}{a+c \cos \theta}=\frac{1}{a /\left(a^{2}-c^{2}\right)+c \cos \theta /\left(a^{2}-c^{2}\right)}
\end{align*}
$$

By inspection, this is the same form as Eq. (4.34) with $\boldsymbol{a} /\left(\boldsymbol{a}^{2}-\boldsymbol{c}^{2}\right)=\boldsymbol{m} \boldsymbol{\alpha} / \boldsymbol{L}^{2}$ and $c /\left(\boldsymbol{a}^{2}-\boldsymbol{c}^{2}\right)=$ A.

Showing that the orbits are ellipses, demonstrates Kepler's First Law. The second law, that orbits sweep out equal area in equal times is simply a statement of angular momentum conservation. During a time $\Delta t$, an orbit sweeps out a triangular sliver of area, $\Delta A=(\mathbf{1} / \mathbf{2}) r v_{\theta} \Delta t$, where $v_{\theta}$ is the velocity in the $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ direction. Given that $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}=\boldsymbol{r} \dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta A & =\frac{1}{2} r^{2} \dot{\theta} \Delta t  \tag{4.36}\\
& =\frac{L}{2 m} \Delta t \tag{4.37}
\end{align*}
$$

Thus, $\Delta A$ is the same for each time interval $\Delta t$.
Kepler's Third law states the relation between the orbital period and the radius,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{T^{2}}{a^{3}}=\text { constant for all bodies rotating around same object. } \tag{4.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{a}$ is the semi-major axis of the ellipse. This can be derived, with some work, using the relations above. First, we note that the period can be found by dividing the area of the ellipse by the rate at which area is being swept out. This rate is given by Kepler's second law above, $L / \mathbf{m}$, and the area of the ellipse is $\pi \boldsymbol{a} \sqrt{\boldsymbol{a}^{2}-\boldsymbol{c}^{2}}$. This gives the period,

$$
\begin{align*}
T & =\frac{2 m \pi a \sqrt{a^{2}-c^{2}}}{L}  \tag{4.39}\\
T^{2} & =\frac{4 m^{2} \pi^{2} a^{2}\left(a^{2}-c^{2}\right)}{L^{2}} \tag{4.40}
\end{align*}
$$

Next, one applies energy conservation, equating the energy at the apogee and perigee (furthest and closest points of the orbit). The radii at these points are $a+c$ and $a-c$ respectively. At each of those points the radial component of the velocity vanishes and the energy is composed solely of the potential energy and the transverse kinetic energy,

$$
\begin{align*}
E_{\text {apogee }} & =E_{\text {perigee }}  \tag{4.41}\\
\frac{L^{2}}{2 m(a+c)^{2}}-\frac{G M m}{a+c} & =\frac{L^{2}}{2 m(a-c)}-\frac{G M m}{a-c} \tag{4.42}
\end{align*}
$$

Multiplying the entire equation by $(a+c)^{2}(a-c)^{2}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{L^{2}}{2 m}\left[(a-c)^{2}-(a+c)^{2}\right] & =-G M m\left[(a+c)^{2}(a-c)-(a-c)^{2}(a+c)\right]  \tag{4.43}\\
\frac{L^{2}}{2 G M m^{2}}(4 a c) & =2\left(a^{2}-c^{2}\right) c  \tag{4.44}\\
\frac{\left(a^{2}-c^{2}\right) m^{2}}{L^{2}} & =\frac{a}{G M} \tag{4.45}
\end{align*}
$$

Inserting this into equation Eq. (4.39),

$$
\begin{equation*}
T^{2}=\frac{4 \pi^{2} a^{3}}{G M} \tag{4.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

The distance $\boldsymbol{a}$ is the semi-major axis of the ellipse. Thus, the period of planets around the same sun all scale with $a^{3 / 2}$. Planets orbiting heavier stars have their periods scale with $M^{1 / 2}$. It is straight-forward to check this relation in the limit of circular orbits, where $\boldsymbol{r}=\boldsymbol{a}$.

### 4.4 Centrifugal Potential/Barrier and the Effective Radial Potential

It is often useful to isolate the radial behavior of motion, ignoring the angular dependence. In order to do that, one must account for the angular momentum. For example, if a rock is dropped
from a distance $r$ from the sun with zero radial velocity, it will fall toward the center of the sun. However, if the rock has sufficent angular momentum, it can instead enter into an orbit, with the minimum radius being determined by the angular momentum and the initial radius. Thus, angular momentum affects the evolution of $\boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{t})$. Fortunately, as will be shown below, one can absorb all the effects of angular motion into the evolution of $\boldsymbol{r}(\boldsymbol{t})$ by adding an additional term to the original radial potential. This term, $\boldsymbol{L}^{2} / \mathbf{m} \boldsymbol{r}^{2}$, behaves like an additional term to the potential energy and allows one to understand the radial behavior as a one-dimensional expression. This approach makes it rather straight-forward to address numerous questions about whether astronomical objects will collide, or whether nuclei might fuse. When solving Schrödinger's equation for a radial potential, the same term, but with $L^{2} / 2 m r^{2} \rightarrow \hbar^{2} \ell(\ell+1) / 2 m r^{2}$, comes into play when solving for radial wave-functions.
The total energy of a particle is

$$
\begin{align*}
E & =U(r)+\frac{1}{2} m v_{\theta}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} m \dot{r}^{2}  \tag{4.47}\\
& =U(r)+\frac{1}{2} m r^{2} \dot{\theta}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} m \dot{r}^{2} \\
& =U(r)+\frac{L^{2}}{2 m r^{2}}+\frac{1}{2} m \dot{r}^{2}
\end{align*}
$$

The second term then contributes to the energy like an additional repulsive potential. The term is sometimes referred to as the "centrifugal potential" or the "centrifugal barrier", even though it is actually the kinetic energy of the angular motion. Combined with $\boldsymbol{U}(\boldsymbol{r})$, it is sometimes referred to as the "effective" potential,

$$
\begin{equation*}
U_{\mathrm{eff}}(r)=U(r)+\frac{L^{2}}{2 m r^{2}} \tag{4.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that if one treats the effective potential like a real potential, one would expect to be able to generate an effective force,

$$
\begin{align*}
\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathrm{eff}} & =-\frac{d}{d r} U(r)-\frac{d}{d r} \frac{L^{2}}{2 m r^{2}}  \tag{4.49}\\
& =F(r)+\frac{L^{2}}{m r^{3}}=F(r)+m \frac{v_{\perp}^{2}}{r}
\end{align*}
$$

which is indeed matches the form for $\boldsymbol{m} \ddot{\boldsymbol{r}}$ in Eq. (4.25), which includes the "centrifugal force".
Example 4.5: Rotationally Symmetric Harmonic Oscillator Potential
Consider a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ in a 2-dimensional harmonic oscillator with potential

$$
U=\frac{1}{2} k r^{2}=\frac{1}{2} k\left(x^{2}+y^{2}\right)
$$

If the orbit has angular momentum $L$, find
a) the radius and angular velocity of the circular orbit
b) the angular frequency of small radial perturbations

## Solution:

a) Consider the effective potential. The radius of a circular orbit is at the minimum of the potential (where the effective force is zero).

$$
U_{\mathrm{eff}}=\frac{1}{2} k r^{2}+\frac{L^{2}}{2 m r^{2}}
$$

The effective potential looks like that of a harmonic oscillator for large $r$, but for small $r$, the centrifugal potential repels the particle from the origin. The combination of the two potentials has a minimum for at some radius $r_{\text {min }}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 & =k r_{\min }-\frac{L^{2}}{m r_{\min }^{3}} \\
r_{\min } & =\left(\frac{L^{2}}{m k}\right)^{1 / 4}, \\
\dot{\theta} & =\frac{L}{m r_{\min }^{2}}=\sqrt{k / m}
\end{aligned}
$$

For particles at $\boldsymbol{r}_{\min }$ with $\dot{\boldsymbol{r}}=\mathbf{0}$, the particle does not accelerate and $\boldsymbol{r}$ stays constant, i.e. a circular orbit. The radius of the circular orbit can be adjusted by changing the angular momentum $L$.
b) Now consider small vibrations about $\boldsymbol{r}_{\text {min }}$. The effective spring constant is the curvature of the effective potential.

$$
\begin{aligned}
k_{\mathrm{eff}} & =\left.\frac{d^{2}}{d r^{2}} U_{\mathrm{eff}}(r)\right|_{r=r_{\mathrm{min}}}=k+\frac{3 L^{2}}{m r_{\mathrm{min}}^{4}} \\
& =4 k, \\
\omega_{r} & =\sqrt{k_{\mathrm{eff}} / m}=2 \sqrt{k / m}=2 \dot{\theta}
\end{aligned}
$$

Here, the second step used the result of the last step from part (a). Because the radius oscillates with twice the angular frequency, the orbit has two places where $r$ reaches a minimum in one cycle. This differs from the inverse-square force where there is one minimum in an orbit. One can show that the orbit for the harmonic oscillator is also elliptical, but in this case the center of the potential is at the center of the ellipse, not at one of the foci.
The solution is also simple to write down exactly in Cartesian coordinates. The $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ equations of motion separate,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \ddot{\boldsymbol{x}}=-k x \\
& \ddot{\boldsymbol{y}}=-k y
\end{aligned}
$$

So the general solution can be expressed as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x=A \cos \omega_{0} t+B \sin \omega_{0} t \\
& y=C \cos \omega_{0} t+D \sin \omega_{0} t
\end{aligned}
$$

With some work using double angle formulas, one can calculate

$$
\begin{aligned}
r^{2} & =x^{2}+y^{2} \\
& =\left(A^{2}+C^{2}\right) \cos ^{2}\left(\omega_{0} t\right)+\left(B^{2}+D^{2}\right) \sin ^{2} \omega_{0} t+(A B+C D) \cos \left(\omega_{0} t\right) \sin \left(\omega_{0} t\right) \\
& =\alpha+\beta \cos 2 \omega_{0} t+\gamma \sin 2 \omega_{0} t \\
\alpha & =\frac{A^{2}+B^{2}+C^{2}+D^{2}}{2}, \beta=\frac{A^{2}-B^{2}+C^{2}-D^{2}}{2}, \gamma=A B+C D \\
r^{2} & =\alpha+\left(\beta^{2}+\gamma^{2}\right)^{1 / 2} \cos \left(2 \omega_{0} t-\delta\right), \delta=\arctan (\gamma / \beta)
\end{aligned}
$$

and see that the radius oscillates with frequency $2 \omega_{0}$. The factor of two comes because the oscillation $\boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{A} \cos \omega_{0} t$ has two maxima for $\boldsymbol{x}^{2}$, one at $t=0$ and one a half period later.

### 4.5 Stability of Orbits

The effective force can be extracted from the effective potential, $\boldsymbol{U}_{\text {eff }}$. Beginning from the equations of motion, Eq. (4.30), for $\boldsymbol{r}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
m \ddot{r} & =F+\frac{L^{2}}{m r^{3}}  \tag{4.50}\\
& =F_{\mathrm{eff}} \\
& =-\partial_{r} U_{\mathrm{eff}} \\
F_{\mathrm{eff}} & =-\partial_{r}\left[U(r)+\left(L^{2} / 2 m r^{2}\right)\right]
\end{align*}
$$

For a circular orbit, the radius must be fixed as a function of time, so one must be at a maximum or a minimum of the effective potential. However, if one is at a maximum of the effective potential the radius will be unstable. For the attractive Coulomb force the effective potential will be dominated by the $-\alpha / r$ term for large $r$ because the centrifugal part falls off more quickly, $\sim 1 / r^{2}$. At low $r$ the centrifugal piece wins and the effective potential is repulsive. Thus, the potential must have a minimum somewhere with negative potential. The circular orbits are then stable to perturbation.
If one considers a potential that falls as $1 / r^{3}$, the situation is reversed and the point where $\boldsymbol{\partial}_{r} \boldsymbol{U}$ disappears will be a local maximum rather than a local minimum - see Fig. 4.2. The repulsive centrifugal piece dominates at large $r$ and the attractive Coulomb piece wins out at small $r$. The circular orbit is then at a maximum of the effective potential and the orbits are unstable. It is the clear that for potentials that fall as $\boldsymbol{r}^{n}$, that one must have $\boldsymbol{n}>-2$ for the orbits to be stable.

## Example 4.6: Linearly Growing Radial Potential

Consider a potential $\boldsymbol{U}(\boldsymbol{r})=\boldsymbol{\beta}$. For a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ with angular momentum $\boldsymbol{L}$,
(a) Find the angular frequency of a circular orbit.
(b) Find the angular frequency for small radial perturbations.

## Solution:

(a) For the circular orbit you search for the position $\boldsymbol{r}_{\min }$ where the effective potential is mini-


Figure 4.2: The effective potential is sketched for two cases, a $1 / r$ attractive potential and a $1 / r^{\mathbf{3}}$ attractive potential. The $1 / r$ case has a stable minimum, whereas the circular orbit in the $1 / r^{3}$ case is unstable.
mized,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\partial_{r}\left\{\beta r+\frac{L^{2}}{2 m r^{2}}\right\} & =0 \\
\beta & =\frac{L^{2}}{m r_{\min }^{3}}, \\
r_{\min } & =\left(\frac{L^{2}}{\beta m}\right)^{1 / 3}, \\
\dot{\theta} & =\frac{L}{m r_{\min }^{2}}=\frac{\beta^{2 / 3}}{(m L)^{1 / 3}}
\end{aligned}
$$

(b) Now, we can find the angular frequency of small perturbations about the circular orbit. To do this we find the effective spring constant for the effective potential,

$$
\begin{aligned}
k_{\mathrm{eff}} & =\left.\partial_{r}^{2} U_{\mathrm{eff}}\right|_{r_{\mathrm{min}}} \\
& =\frac{3 L^{2}}{m r_{\mathrm{min}}^{4}} \\
\omega & =\sqrt{\frac{k_{\mathrm{eff}}}{m}} \\
& =\frac{\beta^{2 / 3}}{(m L)^{1 / 3}} \sqrt{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

If the two frequencies, $\dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ and $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, differ by an integer factor, the orbit's trajectory will repeat itself each time around. This is the case for the inverse-square force, $\boldsymbol{\omega}=\dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$, and for the harmonic oscillator, $\omega=2 \dot{\theta}$. In this case, $\omega=\sqrt{3} \dot{\theta}$, and the angles at which the maxima and minima occur change with each orbit.

### 4.6 Scattering and Cross Sections

Scattering experiments don't measure entire trajectories. For elastic collisions, they measure the distribution of final scattering angles at best. Most experiments use targets thin enough so that the number of scatterings is typically zero or one. The cross section, $\sigma$, describes the crosssectional area for particles to scatter with an individual target atom or nucleus. Cross section measurements form the basis for MANY fields of physics. The cross section, and the differential cross section, which describes the probability of scattering into a given angle, encapsulates everything measurable for a collision where all that is measured is the final state, e.g. the outgoing particle had momentum $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{p}}_{\boldsymbol{f}}$. By studying cross sections, one can infer information about the potential interaction between the two particles. Inferring, or constraining, the potential from the cross section is a classic inverse problem. Measuring the differential cross section, even when done at all angles, constrains the potential, but does not necessarily determine it absolutely, as different potentials can sometimes give identical differential cross sections. But, the constraint becomes stronger if the cross sections are measured at multiple energies at a wide range of angles.
Collisions are either elastic or inelastic. Elastic collisions are those for which the two bodies are in the same internal state before and after the collision. In this case, the kinetic energy of the particles is the same before and after the collision. If the collision excites one of the participants into a higher state, or transforms the particles into different species, or creates additional particles, the collision is inelastic. The energy used to excite one of the particles into a more energetic state is taken out of the kinetic energy. Here, we consider only elastic collisions.
Visually, one can imagine looking at a target particle, from far away, so that one sees only in the $\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}$ plane, with the center of the target particle at the origin. If an incoming particle moving parallel to the $\boldsymbol{z}$ axis comes close to the particle, i.e. its $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ coordinates are not too large, it will feel the effects of the potential and its momentum will be altered. Whereas before it scattered, its velocity was along the $\boldsymbol{z}$ axis, or its polar angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ was zero, after its trajectory is altered its final velocity is in some direction $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}$, known as the scattering angle. If one were to shade in the area of the $\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}$ plane corresponding to the initial trajectories that will scatter, that area is the total cross section.
For Coulomb forces, the total cross section is infinite because the range of the Coulomb force is infinite, but for interactions such as the strong interaction in nuclear or particle physics, there is no long-range force and cross-sections are finite. Even for Coulomb forces, the part of the cross section that corresponds to a specific scattering angle, $d \sigma / d \Omega$, which is a function of the scattering angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}$ is still finite.
If a particle travels through a thin target, the chance the particle scatters is $P_{\text {scatt }}=\sigma \boldsymbol{d N} / \boldsymbol{d A}$, where $d N / d A$ is the number of scattering centers per area the particle encounters. If the density of the target is $\boldsymbol{n}$ particles per volume, and if the thickness of the target is $\boldsymbol{t}$, the areal density (number of target scatterers per area) is $\boldsymbol{d N} / \boldsymbol{d A}=\boldsymbol{n t}$. Because one wishes to quantify the collisions independently of the target, experimentalists measure scattering probabilities, then divide by the areal density to obtain cross-sections,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma=\frac{P_{\mathrm{scatt}}}{d N / d A}=\frac{P_{\mathrm{scatt}}}{n t} \tag{4.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

Instead of merely stating that a particle collided, one can measure the probability the particle
scattered by a given angle. The scattering angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{\boldsymbol{s}}$ is defined so that at zero the particle is unscattered and at $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{\boldsymbol{s}}=\boldsymbol{\pi}$ the particle is scattered directly backward. Scattering angles are often described in the center-of-mass frame, but that is a detail we will neglect for this first discussion, where we will consider the scattering of particles moving classically under the influence of fixed potentials $\boldsymbol{U}(\vec{r})$. Because the distribution of scattering angles can be measured, one expresses the differential cross section,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} \sigma}{d \cos \theta_{s} d \phi_{s}} \tag{4.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\phi_{s}$ is the azimuthal angle. In the usual definition of spherical coordinates, $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}=\mathbf{0}$ correspondes to the $\hat{z}$ direction, so the particle is initially moving in the $+\hat{z}$ direction.
Usually, the literatures expresses differential cross sections as

$$
\begin{equation*}
d \sigma / d \Omega=\frac{d \sigma}{d \cos \theta_{s} d \phi_{s}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi} \frac{d \sigma}{d \cos \theta_{s}} \tag{4.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the last equivalency is true when the scattering does not depend on the azimuthal angle $\phi_{s}$, as is the case for spherically symmetric potentials. The "solid angle" refers to this differential angle in coordinate space,

$$
\begin{equation*}
d \Omega=d \cos \theta_{s} d \phi_{s} \tag{4.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

The differential solid angle $\boldsymbol{d} \Omega$ can be thought of as the area subtended by a measurement, $\boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{A}_{\boldsymbol{d}}$, divided by $r^{2}$, where $r$ is the distance to the detector,

$$
\begin{equation*}
d A_{d}=r^{2} d \Omega \tag{4.55}
\end{equation*}
$$

With this definition $d \sigma / d \Omega$ is independent of the distance from the target at which one places the detector, or the size of the detector (as long as it is small). For a small detector of area $\boldsymbol{A}_{d}$ placed a distance $r$ from the target, the solid angle of the detector is $\Delta \Omega=A_{d} / r^{2}$.
Differential scattering cross sections are calculated by assuming a random distribution of impact parameters $\vec{b}$. These represent the distance in the $\boldsymbol{x y}$ plane for particles moving in the $\boldsymbol{z}$ direction relative to the scattering center. Here, we consider spherically symmetric potentials, which means that the scattering angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}$ will not depend on the direction of $\vec{b}$ in the $\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}$ plane, and we can calculate $\boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{\sigma} / \boldsymbol{d}\left(\boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}\right)$ as a function of the magnitude $\boldsymbol{b}=|\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{b}}|$. An impact parameter $\boldsymbol{b}=\mathbf{0}$ refers to being aimed directly at the target's center. The impact parameter describes the transverse distance from the $\boldsymbol{z}=\mathbf{0}$ axis for the trajectory when it is still far away from the scattering center and has not yet been influenced by it. The differential cross section can be expressed in terms of $\boldsymbol{b}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
d \sigma=2 \pi b d b \tag{4.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is the area of a thin ring of radius $\boldsymbol{b}$ and thickness $\boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{b}$. In classical physics, one can calculate the trajectory given the incoming kinetic energy $\boldsymbol{E}$ and the impact parameter if one knows the mass and potential. From the trajectory, one then finds the scattering angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}(\boldsymbol{b})$. The differential cross section is then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega}=\frac{1}{2 \pi} \frac{d \sigma}{d \cos \theta_{s}}=b \frac{d b}{d \cos \theta_{s}}=\frac{b}{(d / d b) \cos \theta_{s}(b)} \tag{4.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

Typically, one would calculate $\cos \boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}$ and $(\boldsymbol{d} / \boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{b}) \cos \boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}$ as functions of $\boldsymbol{b}$. This is sufficient to plot the differential cross section as a function of $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{\boldsymbol{s}}$.
The total cross section is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{\mathrm{tot}}=\int d \Omega \frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega}=2 \pi \int d \cos \theta_{s} \frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} \tag{4.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

Even if the total cross section is infinite, e.g. Coulomb forces, one can still have a finite differential cross section as we will see later on.

## Example 4.7: Cross Section for Asteroid

An asteroid of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ and kinetic energy $\boldsymbol{E}$ approaches a planet of radius $\boldsymbol{R}$ and mass $\boldsymbol{M}$. What is the cross section for the asteroid to impact the planet?

## Solution:

Calculate the maximum impact parameter, $\boldsymbol{b}_{\max }$, for which the asteroid will hit the planet. The total cross section for impact is $\sigma_{\text {impact }}=\pi b_{\max }^{2}$. The maximum cross-section can be found with the help of angular momentum conservation. The asteroid's incoming momentum is $p_{0}=\sqrt{2 m E}$ and the angular momentum is $L=p_{0} b$. If the asteroid just grazes the planet, it is moving with zero radial kinetic energy at impact. Combining energy and angular momentum conservation and having $\boldsymbol{p}_{\boldsymbol{f}}$ refer to the momentum of the asteroid at a distance R,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{p_{f}^{2}}{2 m}-\frac{G M m}{R} & =E \\
p_{f} R & =p_{0} b_{\max }
\end{aligned}
$$

Here, we have exploited the fact that for a grazing trajectory, the particle is moving purely transversely when it has radius $\boldsymbol{R}$, thus its angular momentum is $\boldsymbol{p}_{f} \boldsymbol{R}$. This allows one to solve for $b_{\text {max }}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
b_{\max } & =R \frac{p_{f}}{p_{0}} \\
& =R \frac{\sqrt{2 m(E+G M m / R)}}{\sqrt{2 m E}} \\
\sigma_{\text {impact }} & =\pi R^{2}\left(1+\frac{G M m / R}{E}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

One can see that for a very high-energy asteroid, where the trajectory is nearly a straight line, that the cross section becomes the simple geometric form, $\boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{R}^{2}$.

### 4.7 Center-of-Mass Coordinates

Thus far, we have considered the trajectory as if the force is centered around a fixed point. For two bodies interacting only with one another, both masses circulate around the center of mass. One might think that solutions would become more complex when both particles move, but we will see here that the problem can be reduced to one with a single body moving according to a
fixed force by expressing the trajectories for $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{1}$ and $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{2}$ into the center-of-mass coordinate $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\mathrm{cm}}$ and the relative coordinate $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\vec{R}_{\mathrm{cm}} & \equiv \frac{m_{1} \vec{r}_{1}+m_{2} \vec{r}_{2}}{m_{1}+m_{2}}  \tag{4.59}\\
\vec{r} & \equiv \vec{r}_{1}-\overrightarrow{r_{2}}
\end{align*}
$$

Here, we assume the two particles interact only with one another, so $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{\mathbf{1 2}}=-\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{\mathbf{2 1}}$ (where $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}_{\boldsymbol{i j}}$ is the force on $\boldsymbol{i}$ due to $\boldsymbol{j}$. The equations of motion then become

$$
\begin{align*}
\ddot{\vec{R}}_{\mathrm{cm}} & =\frac{1}{m_{1}+m_{2}}\left\{m_{1} \ddot{\vec{r}}_{1}+m_{2} \ddot{\vec{r}}_{2}\right\}  \tag{4.60}\\
& =\frac{1}{m_{1}+m_{2}}\left\{\vec{F}_{12}+\vec{F}_{21}\right\}=0 . \\
\ddot{\vec{r}} & =\ddot{\vec{r}}_{1}-\ddot{\vec{r}}_{2}=\left(\frac{\vec{F}_{12}}{m_{1}}-\frac{\vec{F}_{21}}{m_{2}}\right)  \tag{4.61}\\
& =\left(\frac{1}{m_{1}}+\frac{1}{m_{2}}\right) \vec{F}_{12}
\end{align*}
$$

The first expression simply states that the center of mass coordinate $\boldsymbol{R}_{\mathrm{cm}}$ moves at a fixed velocity. The second expression can be rewritten in terms of the reduced mass $\boldsymbol{\mu}$.

$$
\begin{align*}
\mu \ddot{\vec{r}} & =\vec{F}_{12}  \tag{4.62}\\
\frac{1}{\mu} & =\frac{1}{m_{1}}+\frac{1}{m_{2}}, \quad \mu=\frac{m_{1} m_{2}}{m_{1}+m_{2}} \tag{4.63}
\end{align*}
$$

Thus, one can treat the trajectory as a one-body problem where the reduced mass is $\boldsymbol{\mu}$, and a second trivial problem for the center of mass. The reduced mass is especially convenient when one is considering gravitational problems because then

$$
\begin{align*}
\mu \ddot{r} & =-\frac{G m_{1} m_{2}}{r^{2}} \hat{r}  \tag{4.64}\\
& =-\frac{G M \mu}{r^{2}} \hat{r}, \quad M \equiv m_{1}+m_{2}
\end{align*}
$$

For the gravitational problem, the reduced mass then falls out and the trajectory depends only on the total mass $M$.
The kinetic energy and momenta also have analogues in center-of-mass coordinates. The total and relative momenta are

$$
\begin{align*}
\vec{P} & \equiv \vec{p}_{1}+\vec{p}_{2}=M \dot{\vec{R}}_{\mathrm{cm}}  \tag{4.65}\\
\vec{q} & \equiv \mu \dot{\vec{r}}
\end{align*}
$$

With these definitions, a little algebra shows that the kinetic energy becomes

$$
\begin{align*}
T & =\frac{1}{2} m_{1}\left|\vec{v}_{1}\right|^{2}+\frac{1}{2} m_{2}\left|\vec{v}_{2}\right|^{2}  \tag{4.66}\\
& =\frac{1}{2} M\left|\dot{\vec{R}}_{\mathrm{cm}}\right|^{2}+\frac{1}{2} \mu|\dot{\vec{r}}|^{2} \\
& =\frac{P^{2}}{2 M}+\frac{q^{2}}{2 \mu}
\end{align*}
$$

The standard strategy is to transform into the center of mass frame, then treat the problem as one of a single particle of mass $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ undergoing a force $\boldsymbol{F}_{\mathbf{1 2}}$. Scattering angles can also be expressed in this frame, then transformed into the lab frame. In practice, one sees examples in the literature where $d \sigma / d \Omega$ expressed in both the "center-of-mass" and in the "laboratory" frame.

### 4.8 Rutherford Scattering

This refers to the calculation of $d \sigma / d \Omega$ due to an inverse square force, $F_{12}=\mp \alpha / r^{2}$ for a attractive/repulsive interaction. Rutherford compared the scattering of $\alpha$ particles ( ${ }^{4} \mathrm{He}$ nuclei) off of a nucleus and found the scattering angle at which the formula began to fail. This correspondeds to the impact parameter for which the trajectories would strike the nucleus. This provided the first measure of the size of the atomic nucleus. At the time, the distribution of the positive charge (the protons) was considered to be just as spread out amongst the atomic volume as the electrons. After Rutherford's experiment, it was clear that the radius of the nucleus tended to be roughly 4 orders of magnitude smaller than that of the atom, which is similar to the size of a football relative to Spartan Stadium.


Figure 4.3: The incoming and outgoing angles of the trajectory are at $\pm \boldsymbol{\theta}^{\prime}$. They are related to the scattering angle by $2 \theta^{\prime}=\pi+\theta_{s}$.

In order to calculate differential cross section, we must find how the impact parameter is related to the scattering angle. This requires analysis of the trajectory. We consider our previous expression for the trajectory where we derived the elliptic form for the trajectory, Eq. (4.34). For that case we considered an attractive force with the particle's energy being negative, i.e. it was bound. However, the same form will work for positive energy, and repulsive forces can be considered by simple flipping the sign of $\alpha$. For positive energies, the trajectories will be hyperbolas, rather than ellipses, with the asymptotes of the trajectories representing the directions of the incoming and outgoing tracks. Rewriting the solution for a potential,

$$
\begin{equation*}
V(r)=\frac{-\alpha}{r} \tag{4.67}
\end{equation*}
$$

the solution for the trajectory was given in Eq. (4.34),

$$
\begin{equation*}
r=\frac{1}{\frac{m \alpha}{L^{2}}+A \cos \left(\theta-\theta_{0}\right)} \tag{4.68}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{A}$ is an arbitrary constant. If $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ is negative, the interaction is repulsive, and by considering $\boldsymbol{\theta}-\boldsymbol{\theta}_{0}=\boldsymbol{\pi} / \mathbf{2}$ one can see there will always be values of $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ for which the denominator, and therfore $r$, become negative. Or course, radii need to be positive. Even if $\alpha$ is positive, there might still be values of $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ for which $\boldsymbol{r}$ becomes negative. Once $\boldsymbol{A}$ is large enough, which will happen if the energy is positive, the denominator will become negative for a range of $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ if $\boldsymbol{A}>$ $\boldsymbol{m} \boldsymbol{\alpha} / L^{2}$. The angles for which the radii are unphysical correpond to the angle that a trajectory doesn't reach certain angles.
Setting $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{0}=0$, the asymptotic angles $\boldsymbol{\theta}^{\prime}$ are those for which the denominator goes to zero,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\cos \theta^{\prime}=-\frac{m \alpha}{A L^{2}} \tag{4.69}
\end{equation*}
$$

The trajectory's point of closest approach is at $\boldsymbol{\theta}=\mathbf{0}$ and the two angles $\boldsymbol{\theta}^{\prime}$, which have this value of $\cos \boldsymbol{\theta}^{\prime}$, are the angles of the incoming and outgoing particles. From Fig. 4.3, one can see that the scattering angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}$ is given by,

$$
\begin{align*}
2 \theta^{\prime}-\pi & =\theta_{s}, \quad \theta^{\prime}=\frac{\pi}{2}+\frac{\theta_{s}}{2}  \tag{4.70}\\
\sin \left(\theta_{s} / 2\right) & =-\cos \theta^{\prime} \\
& =\frac{m \alpha}{A L^{2}}
\end{align*}
$$

Now that we have $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{m}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \boldsymbol{L}$ and $\boldsymbol{A}$, we wish to re-express $\boldsymbol{L}$ and $\boldsymbol{A}$ in terms of the impact parameter $\boldsymbol{b}$ and the energy $\boldsymbol{E}$. This will set us up to calculate the differential cross section, which requires knowing $\boldsymbol{d b} / \boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}$. It is easy to write the angular momentum as

$$
\begin{equation*}
L^{2}=p_{0}^{2} b^{2}=2 m E b^{2} \tag{4.71}
\end{equation*}
$$

Finding $\boldsymbol{A}$ is more complicated. To accomplish this we realize that the point of closest approach occurs at $\boldsymbol{\theta}=0$, so from Eq. (4.68)

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{1}{r_{\min }} & =\frac{m \alpha}{L^{2}}+A  \tag{4.72}\\
A & =\frac{1}{r_{\min }}-\frac{m \alpha}{L^{2}}
\end{align*}
$$

Next, $\boldsymbol{r}_{\text {min }}$ can be found in terms of the energy because at the point of closest approach the kinetic energy is due purely to the motion perpendicular to $\hat{r}$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=-\frac{\alpha}{r_{\min }}+\frac{L^{2}}{2 m r_{\min }^{2}} \tag{4.73}
\end{equation*}
$$

One can solve the quadratic equation for $1 / r_{\text {min }}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{r_{\min }}=\frac{m \alpha}{L^{2}}+\sqrt{\left(m \alpha / L^{2}\right)^{2}+2 m E / L^{2}} \tag{4.74}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can plug the expression for $\boldsymbol{r}_{\text {min }}$ into the expression for $\boldsymbol{A}$, Eq. (4.72),

$$
\begin{equation*}
A=\sqrt{\left(m \alpha / L^{2}\right)^{2}+2 m E / L^{2}}=\sqrt{\left(\alpha^{2} /\left(4 E^{2} b^{4}\right)+1 / b^{2}\right.} \tag{4.75}
\end{equation*}
$$

Finally, we insert the expression for $\boldsymbol{A}$ into that for the scattering angle, Eq. (4.70),

$$
\begin{align*}
\sin \left(\theta_{s} / 2\right) & =\frac{m \alpha}{A L^{2}}  \tag{4.76}\\
& =\frac{a}{\sqrt{a^{2}+b^{2}}}, \quad a \equiv \frac{\alpha}{2 E}
\end{align*}
$$

The differential cross section can now be found by differentiating the expression for $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}$ with $\boldsymbol{b}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{1}{2} \cos \left(\theta_{s} / 2\right) d \theta_{s} & =\frac{a b d b}{\left(a^{2}+b^{2}\right)^{3 / 2}}=\frac{b d b}{a^{2}} \sin ^{3}\left(\theta_{s} / 2\right)  \tag{4.77}\\
d \sigma & =2 \pi b d b=\frac{\pi a^{2}}{\sin ^{3}\left(\theta_{s} / 2\right)} \cos \left(\theta_{s} / 2\right) d \theta_{s} \\
& =\frac{\pi a^{2}}{2 \sin ^{4}\left(\theta_{s} / 2\right)} \sin \theta_{s} d \theta_{s} \\
\frac{d \sigma}{d \cos \theta_{s}} & =\frac{\pi a^{2}}{2 \sin ^{4}\left(\theta_{s} / 2\right)} \\
\frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega} & =\frac{a^{2}}{4 \sin ^{4}\left(\theta_{s} / 2\right)}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{a}=\alpha / \mathbf{E} \boldsymbol{E}$. This is the Rutherford formula for the differential cross section. It diverges as $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{\boldsymbol{s}} \rightarrow 0$ because scatterings with arbitrarily large impact parameters still scatter to arbitrarily small scattering angles. The integral,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{\mathrm{tot}}=\int d \Omega \frac{d \sigma}{d \Omega}=2 \pi \int \sin \theta_{s} d \theta_{s} \frac{a^{2}}{4 \sin ^{4}\left(\theta_{s} / 2\right)} \tag{4.78}
\end{equation*}
$$

is then infinite. The expression for $d \sigma / d \Omega$ is the same whether the interaction is positive or negative.

## Example 4.8: Nuclear Radius from Rutherford Scattering

Consider a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ and charge $\boldsymbol{z}$ with kinetic energy $\boldsymbol{E}$ (Let it be the center-of-mass energy) incident on a heavy nucleus of mass $\boldsymbol{M}$ and charge $\boldsymbol{Z}$ and radius $\boldsymbol{R}$. Find the angle at which the Rutherford scattering formula breaks down.

## Solution:

Let $\alpha=Z \boldsymbol{z} \boldsymbol{e}^{2} /\left(4 \pi \epsilon_{0}\right)$. The scattering angle in Eq. (4.76) is

$$
\sin \left(\theta_{s} / 2\right)=\frac{a}{\sqrt{a^{2}+b^{2}}}, \quad a \equiv \frac{\alpha}{2 E}
$$

The impact parameter $\boldsymbol{b}$ for which the point of closest approach equals $\boldsymbol{R}$ can be found by
using angular momentum conservation,

$$
\begin{aligned}
p_{0} b & =b \sqrt{2 m E}=R p_{f}=R \sqrt{2 m(E-\alpha / R)} \\
b & =R \frac{\sqrt{2 m(E-\alpha / R)}}{\sqrt{2 m E}} \\
& =R \sqrt{1-\frac{\alpha}{E R}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Putting these together

$$
\theta_{s}=2 \sin ^{-1}\left\{\frac{a}{\sqrt{a^{2}+R^{2}(1-\alpha /(R E))}}\right\}, \quad a=\frac{\alpha}{2 E}
$$

It was from this departure of the experimentally measured $d \sigma / d \Omega$ from the Rutherford formula that allowed Rutherford to infer the radius of the gold nucleus, $\boldsymbol{R}$.

### 4.9 Exercises

1. Approximate Earth as a solid sphere of uniform density and radius $R=6360 \mathrm{~km}$. Suppose you drill a tunnel from the north pole directly to another point on the surface described by a polar angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ relative to the north pole. Drop a mass into the hole and let it slide through tunnel without friction. Find the frequency $f$ with which the mass oscillates back and forth. Ignore Earth's rotation. Compare this to the frequency of a low-lying circular orbit.
2. Consider the gravitational field of the moon acting on the Earth.
(a) Calculate the term $\boldsymbol{k}$ in the expansion

$$
m g_{\text {moon }}=m g_{0}+k z+\cdots,
$$

where $z$ is measured relative to Earth's center and is measured along the axis connecting the Earth and moon and $m$ is the mass of some small object. Give your answer in terms of the distance between the moon and the earth, $\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$ and the mass of the moon $\boldsymbol{M}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$ and the object's mass $\boldsymbol{m}$.
(b) Calculate the difference between the height of the oceans at maximum and minimum tides. Express your answer in terms of the quantities above, plus Earth's radius, $\boldsymbol{R}_{e}$. Then give you answer in meters.
3. Consider an ellipse defined by the sum of the distances from the two foci being $2 \boldsymbol{D}$, which expressed in a Cartesian coordinates with the middle of the ellipse being at the origin becomes

$$
\sqrt{(x-a)^{2}+y^{2}}+\sqrt{(x+a)^{2}+y^{2}}=2 D
$$

Here the two foci are at $(\boldsymbol{a}, \mathbf{0})$ and $(-a, 0)$. Show that this form can be written as

$$
\frac{x^{2}}{D^{2}}+\frac{y^{2}}{D^{2}-a^{2}}=1
$$

4. Consider a particle in an attractive inverse-square potential, $\boldsymbol{U}(\boldsymbol{r})=-\boldsymbol{\alpha} / \boldsymbol{r}$, where the point of closest approach is $r_{\min }$ and the total energy of the particle is $\boldsymbol{E}$. Find the parameter $\boldsymbol{A}$ describing the trajectory in Eq. (4.34). Hint: Use the fact that at $\boldsymbol{r}_{\text {min }}$ there is no radial kinetic energy and $E=-\alpha / r_{\text {min }}+L^{2} / 2 m r_{\text {min }}^{2}$.
5. Consider the effective potential for an attractive inverse-square-law force, $\boldsymbol{F}=-\boldsymbol{\alpha} / \boldsymbol{r}^{2}$. Consider a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ with angular momentum $\boldsymbol{L}$.
(a) Find the radius of a circular orbit by solving for the position of the minimum of the effective potential.
(b) What is the angular frequency, $\dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$, of the orbit? Solve this by setting $\boldsymbol{F}=\boldsymbol{m} \dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^{2} \boldsymbol{r}$.
(c) Find the effective spring constant for the particle at the minimum.
(d) What is the angular frequency for small vibrations about the minimum? How does this compare with the answer to (b)?
6. Consider a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ moving in a potential

$$
U=\alpha \ln (r / a)
$$

(a) If the particle is moving in a circular orbit of radius $\boldsymbol{R}$, find the angular frequency $\dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$. Solve this by setting $\boldsymbol{F}=-\boldsymbol{m} \dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^{2} \boldsymbol{r}$ (force and acceleration point inward).
(b) Express the angular momentum $\boldsymbol{L}$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{\alpha}, \boldsymbol{m}$ and $\boldsymbol{R}$. Also express $\boldsymbol{R}$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}$ and $\boldsymbol{m}$.
(c) Sketch the effective radial potential, $\boldsymbol{V}_{\text {eff }}(\boldsymbol{r})$, for a particle with angular momentum $\boldsymbol{L}$. (No longer necessarily moving in a circular orbit.)
(d) Find the position of the minimum of $\boldsymbol{V}_{\text {eff }}$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}$ and $\boldsymbol{m}$, then compare to the result of (b).
(e) What is the effective spring constant for a particle at the minimum of $\boldsymbol{V}_{\text {eff }}$ ? Express your answer in terms of $\boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{m}$ and $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$.
(f) What is the angular frequency, $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, for small oscillations of $\boldsymbol{r}$ about the $\boldsymbol{R}_{\text {min }}$ ? Express your answer in terms of $\dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ from part (a).
7. Consider a particle of mass $m$ in an attractive potential, $\boldsymbol{U}(\boldsymbol{r})=-\alpha / r$, with angular momentum $L$ with just the right energy so that

$$
A=m \alpha / L^{2}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{A}$ comes from the expression

$$
r=\frac{1}{\left(m \alpha / L^{2}\right)+A \cos \theta}
$$

The trajectory can then be rewritten as

$$
r=\frac{2 r_{0}}{1+\cos \theta}, \quad r_{0}=\frac{L^{2}}{2 m \alpha}
$$

(a) Show that for this case the total energy $\boldsymbol{E}$ approaches zero.
(b) Write this trajectory in a more recognizable parabolic form,

$$
x=x_{0}-\frac{y^{2}}{R}
$$

I.e., express $\boldsymbol{x}_{0}$ and $\boldsymbol{R}$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{r}_{\mathbf{0}}$.
(c) Explain how a particle with zero energy can have its trajectory not go through the origin.
(d) What is the scattering angle for this trajectory?
8. Show that if one transforms to a reference frame where the total momentum is zero, $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{p}}_{1}=$ $-\vec{p}_{2}$, that the relative momentum $\vec{q}$ corresponds to either $\vec{p}_{1}$ or $-\vec{p}_{2}$. This means that in this frame the magnitude of $\vec{q}$ is one half the magnitude of $\vec{p}_{1}-\vec{p}_{2}$.
9. Given the center of mass coordinates $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{R}}$ and $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}$ for particles of mass $\boldsymbol{m}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{m}_{2}$, find the coordinates $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{1}$ and $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{2}$ in terms of the masses, $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{R}}$ and $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}$.
10. Consider two particles of identical mass scattering at an angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{\mathbf{c m}}$ in the center of mass.
(a) In a frame where one is the target (initially at rest) and one is the projectile, find the scattering angle in the lab frame, $\boldsymbol{\theta}$, in terms of $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{\mathbf{c m}}$.
(b) Express $d \sigma / d \cos \theta$ in terms of $d \sigma / d \cos \theta_{\mathrm{cm}}$. I.e., find the Jacobian, $d \cos \theta_{\mathrm{cm}} / d \cos \theta$.
11. Assume you are scattering alpha particles (He-4 nuclei $Z=2, A=4$ ) off of a gold target ( $Z=79, A=197$ ). If the radius of the nucleus is $7.5 \times 10^{-15}$ meters, and if the energy of the beam is 38 MeV ,
(a) What is the total cross section for having a nuclear collision? Give the answer in millibarns, $1 \mathrm{mb}=10^{-31} \mathrm{~m}^{2}$.
(b) Find the scattering angle (in degrees) at which the Rutherford differential cross section formula breaks down?
12. A point particle is fired at a spherical target of radius $\boldsymbol{R}$. The particle bounces off the target elastically with scattering angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{s}$. The angle $\phi$ in the figure is only meant to show that for a plane tangent to the surface, the angles relative to the surface are equal for the incoming and outgoing trajectories.

(a) Find the differential cross section $d \sigma / d \Omega=(1 / 2 \pi)\left(d \sigma / d \cos \theta_{s}\right)$.
(b) Integrate $d \sigma / d \Omega$ to obtain the total cross section.

## 5 Rotating Coordinate Systems

### 5.1 Accelerating Frames

Here we again consider the effect of uniformly accelerating reference frames. If a particle is observed in an inertial reference frame, which we will denote with a prime, Newton's third law applies

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{d^{2} \vec{r}^{\prime}}{d t^{2}}=\vec{F} \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, if we have a second coordinate system,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\vec{r}=\vec{r}^{\prime}-\vec{r}_{0}, \quad \overrightarrow{r_{0}}=\frac{1}{2} \vec{a}_{0} t^{2} \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

We would see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \frac{d^{2} \vec{r}}{d t^{2}}=\vec{F}-m \vec{a}_{0} \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{a}}_{0}$ is the acceleration of the coordinate system. The last term acts like an additional apparent force. In fact, it acts like a contribution to the gravitational force which alters the acceleration of gravity by $\delta \vec{g}=-\vec{a}_{0}$.

### 5.2 Rotating Frames

If you are on Earth's surface and if your reference frame is fixed with the surface, this is an example of an accelerating frame, where the acceleration is $\omega^{2} r_{\perp}$, where $r_{\perp} \equiv \sqrt{\boldsymbol{x}^{2}+\boldsymbol{y}^{2}}$, and $\omega$ is the angular velocity of Earth's rotation. The acceleration is inward toward the axis of rotation, so the additional contribution to the apparent acceleration of gravity is outward in the $\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}$ plane. In contrast the usual $\boldsymbol{g}$ is radially inward pointing toward the origin.
In the rotating coordinate system (not an inertial frame), motion is determined by the apparent force and one can define effective potentials. In addition to the normal gravitational potential energy, there is a contribution to the effective potential,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta U_{\mathrm{eff}}=-\frac{m}{2} \omega^{2} r_{\perp}^{2}=-\frac{m}{2} r^{2} \omega^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ is the polar angle, measured from the north pole. If the true gravitational force can be considered as originating from a point in Earth's center, the net effective potential for a mass $m$ near Earth's surface could be

$$
\begin{equation*}
U_{\mathrm{eff}}=m g h-m \frac{1}{2} \omega^{2}(R+h)^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Example 5.1: Ellipticity of Earth's Shape
How much wider is Earth at the equator than the north-south distance between the poles assuming that the gravitational field above the surface can be approximated by that of a point
mass at Earth's center.
Solution: The surface of the ocean must be at constant effective potential for a sample mass $\boldsymbol{m}$. This means that if $\boldsymbol{h}$ now refers to the height of the water

$$
m g[h(\theta=\pi / 2)-h(\theta=0)]=\frac{m}{2} \omega^{2}(R+h)^{2}
$$

Because $\boldsymbol{R} \gg \boldsymbol{h}$, one can approximate $\boldsymbol{R}+\boldsymbol{h} \rightarrow \boldsymbol{R}$ on the right-hand side, thus

$$
h(\theta=\pi)-h(\theta=0)=\frac{\omega^{2} R^{2}}{2 g}
$$

This come out a bit less than 11 km , or a difference of near 22 km for the diameter of the Earth in the equatorial plane compared to a diameter between the poles. In reality, the difference is approximately 41 km . The discrepancy comes from the assumption that the true gravitational force can be treated as if it came from a point at Earth's center. This would be true if the distribution of mass was radially symmetric. However, Earth's center is molten and the rotation distorts the mass distribution. Remarkably this effect nearly doubles the elliptic distortion of Earth's shape. Due to this distortion, the top of Mount Everest is not the furthest point from the center of the Earth. That belongs to the top of a volcano, Chimborazo, in Equador, which is one degree in latitude below the Equator. Chimborazo is about 8500 ft lower than Everest when measured relative to sea level, but is 7700 feet further from the center of the Earth.

### 5.3 Coriolis Force

Consider some vector $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{A}}$ according to an observer in a frame rotating about the $\boldsymbol{z}$ axis with angular velocity $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\omega}}=\boldsymbol{\omega} \hat{\boldsymbol{z}}$. To an observer in the laboratory frame (the primed frame) the vector will change even if the vector appears fixed to the rotating observer. For a rotation of $\Delta \boldsymbol{\theta}=\boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{\Delta t}$, the change of the vector due to the rotation is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta \overrightarrow{A^{\prime}}=\vec{\omega} \times \vec{A} \Delta t \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

If one includes the fact that $\boldsymbol{A}$, the vector measured in the rotating frame, might be changing as a function of time,

$$
\begin{align*}
\Delta \vec{A}^{\prime} & =\Delta \vec{A}+\vec{\omega} \times \vec{A} \Delta t  \tag{5.7}\\
\frac{d}{d t} \vec{A}^{\prime} & =\frac{d}{d t} \vec{A}+\vec{\omega} \times \vec{A}
\end{align*}
$$

If the vector happens to be the position $\vec{r}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\vec{r}}^{\prime}=\vec{v}^{\prime}=\vec{v}+\vec{\omega} \times \vec{r} \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, the first term on the r.h.s. corresponds to the vector $\vec{r}$ not being fixed, but changing with time, $\dot{\vec{r}}=\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}$. One can now use $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}^{\prime}=\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{v}}+\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \times \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}$ in place of $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{A}}$ in Eq. (5.7), and see

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{\vec{v}}^{\prime} & =\frac{d}{d t}(\vec{v}+\vec{\omega} \times \vec{r})+\vec{\omega} \times(\vec{v}+\vec{\omega} \times \vec{r})  \tag{5.9}\\
& =\dot{\vec{v}}+\vec{\omega} \times \dot{\vec{r}}+\vec{\omega} \times(\vec{v}+\vec{\omega} \times \vec{r}) \\
& =\dot{\vec{v}}+2 \vec{\omega} \times \vec{v}+\vec{\omega} \times(\vec{\omega} \times \vec{r})
\end{align*}
$$

Because $\dot{\vec{v}}^{\prime}$ is $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}} / \boldsymbol{m}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\vec{F} & =m\{\vec{a}+2 \vec{\omega} \times \vec{v}+\vec{\omega} \times(\vec{\omega} \times \vec{r})\}  \tag{5.10}\\
m \vec{a} & =\vec{F}-2 m \vec{\omega} \times \vec{v}-m \vec{\omega} \times(\vec{\omega} \times \vec{r})
\end{align*}
$$

The extra terms on the right behave like additional forces. Like gravitational forces, they are proportional to the mass, so the mass cancels for many problems.
The last term, $-\boldsymbol{m} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \times(\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \times \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}})$, represents the centrifugal force. Using the vector identity, $\vec{A} \times(\vec{B} \times \vec{C})=\vec{B}(\vec{A} \cdot \vec{C})-\vec{C}(\vec{A} \cdot \vec{B})$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\vec{\omega} \times(\vec{\omega} \times \vec{r})=\omega^{2} \vec{r}+(\omega \cdot \vec{r}) \vec{\omega} \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ is in the $\boldsymbol{z}$ direction,

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\vec{\omega} \times(\vec{\omega} \times \vec{r})=\omega^{2}(x \hat{x}+y \hat{y}) \tag{5.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

The centrifugal force points outward in the $\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}$ plane, and its magnitude is $\boldsymbol{m} \boldsymbol{\omega}^{2} \boldsymbol{r}_{\perp}$, where $r_{\perp}=\sqrt{x^{2}+y^{2}}$.
The second term is Eq. (5.10) represents the Coriolis force. It does not enter problems like the shape of the Earth above because in that case the water was not moving relative to the rotating frame. Once an object is moving in a rotating frame, the particle is no longer being described in a single accelerating frame because at each point the acceleration is $-\boldsymbol{\omega}^{2} \vec{r}$.

## Example 5.2: Coriolis Force on Dropped Ball

A ball is dropped from a height $h=500 \mathrm{~m}$ above Minneapolis. Due to the Coriolis force, it is deflected by an amount $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{y}$. Find the deflection. Ignore the centrifugal terms.
Solution: The equations of motion are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d v_{x}}{d t} & =-2\left(\omega_{y} v_{z}-\omega_{z} v_{y}\right) \\
\frac{d v_{y}}{d t} & =-2\left(\omega_{z} v_{x}-\omega_{x} v_{z}\right) \\
\frac{d v_{z}}{d t} & =-g-2\left(\omega_{x} v_{y}-\omega_{y} v_{x}\right) \\
\omega_{z} & =\omega \cos \theta, \quad \omega_{y}=\omega \sin \theta, \quad \omega_{x}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

Here the coordinate system is $\hat{\boldsymbol{x}}$ points east, $\hat{\boldsymbol{y}}$ points north and $\hat{\boldsymbol{z}}$ points upward.
One can now ignore all the Coriolis terms on the right-hand sides except for those with $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{z}}$.

The other terms will all be doubly small. One can also throw out terms with $\omega_{x}$. This gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d v_{x}}{d t} & \approx-2 \omega v_{z} \sin \theta \\
\frac{d v_{y}}{d t} & \approx 0 \\
\frac{d v_{z}}{d t} & \approx-g
\end{aligned}
$$

There will be no significant deflection in the $\boldsymbol{y}$ direction, $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{y}=0$, but in the $\boldsymbol{x}$ direction one can substitute $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{z}}=-\boldsymbol{g} \boldsymbol{t}$ above,

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{x} & \approx \int_{0}^{t} d t^{\prime} 2 \omega g t^{\prime} \sin \theta=\omega g t^{2} \sin \theta \\
\delta x & \approx \int_{0}^{t} d t^{\prime} v_{x}\left(t^{\prime}\right)=\frac{g \omega \sin \theta t^{3}}{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

One can find the deflections by using $h=\frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{g} \boldsymbol{t}^{2}$, to find the time, and using the all-knowing internet to see that the latitude of Minneapolis is $44.6^{\circ}$ or $\theta=45.4^{\circ}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
t & =\sqrt{2 h / g}=10.1 \mathrm{~s} \\
\omega & =\frac{2 \pi}{3600 \cdot 24 \mathrm{~s}}=7.27 \times 10^{-5} \mathrm{~s}^{-1} \\
\delta x & =17.4 \mathrm{~cm} \text { (east) }
\end{aligned}
$$

### 5.4 The Foucault Pendulum

The Foucault Pendulum is simply a regular pendulum moving in both horizontal directions, and with the Coriolis force included. In this case,

$$
m \ddot{\vec{r}}=\vec{T}+m \vec{g}-2 m \vec{\Omega} \times \vec{v}
$$

as the centrifugal force term is absorbed into the definition of $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{g}}$. The magnitude of the tension, $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{T}}$, is considered constant because we consider only small oscillations. Then $\boldsymbol{T} \approx \boldsymbol{m g}$, and the components, using $\hat{\boldsymbol{x}}, \hat{\boldsymbol{y}}$ to correspond to east and north respectively, are

$$
T_{x}=-m g x / L, \quad T_{y}=-m g y / L
$$

If $\Omega$ is the rotation of the earth, and if $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ is the polar angle, $\boldsymbol{\pi}$-lattitude,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\ddot{x} & =-g x / L+2 \dot{y} \Omega_{z} \\
\ddot{y} & =-g y / L-2 \dot{x} \Omega_{z}
\end{aligned}
$$

Here we have used the fact that the oscillations are sufficiently small so we can ignore $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{z}}$. Using $\omega_{0} \equiv \sqrt{k / m}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\ddot{x}-2 \Omega_{z} \dot{y}+\omega_{0}^{2} x & =0 \\
\ddot{y}+2 \Omega_{z} \dot{x}+\omega_{0}^{2} y & =0
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\Omega_{z}=|\vec{\Omega}| \cos \theta$, with $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ being the polar angle (zero at the north pole). The terms linear in time derivatives are what make life difficult. This will be solved with a trick. We will incorporate both differential equations into a single complex equation where the first/second are the real/imaginary parts.

$$
\begin{gathered}
\eta \equiv x+i y \\
\ddot{\eta}+2 i \Omega_{z} \dot{\eta}+\omega_{0}^{2} \eta=0 .
\end{gathered}
$$

Now, we guess at a form for the solutions, $\boldsymbol{\eta}(\boldsymbol{t})=e^{-i \alpha t}$, which turns the differential equation into

$$
\begin{aligned}
-\alpha^{2}+2 \Omega_{z} \alpha+\omega_{0}^{2} & =0 \\
\alpha & =\Omega_{z} \pm \sqrt{\Omega_{z}^{2}+\omega_{0}^{2}} \\
& \approx \Omega_{z} \pm \omega_{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

The solution with two arbitrary constants is then

$$
\eta=e^{-i \Omega_{z} t}\left[C_{1} e^{i \omega_{0} t}+C_{2} e^{-i \omega_{0} t}\right]
$$

Here, $\boldsymbol{C}_{\mathbf{1}}$ and $\boldsymbol{C}_{\mathbf{2}}$ are complex, so they actually represent four arbitrary numbers. These four numbers should be fixed by the four initial conditions, i.e. $x(t=0), \dot{x}(t=0), y(t=0)$ and $\dot{\boldsymbol{y}}(t=0)$. With some lengthy algebra, one can rewrite the expression as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\eta=e^{-i \Omega_{z} t}\left[A \cos \left(\omega_{0} t+\phi_{A}\right)+i B \cos \left(\omega_{0} t+\phi_{B}\right)\right] . \tag{5.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, the four coefficients are represented by the two real arbitrary real amplitudes, $\boldsymbol{A}$ and $\boldsymbol{B}$, and two arbitrary phases, $\phi_{A}$ and $\phi_{B}$. For an initial condition where $\boldsymbol{y}=0$ at $t=0$, one can see that $\boldsymbol{B}=\mathbf{0}$. This then gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
\eta(t) & =A e^{-i \Omega_{z} t} \cos \left(\omega_{0} t+\gamma\right) \\
& =A \cos \Omega_{z} t \cos \left(\omega_{0} t+\gamma\right)+i A \sin \Omega_{z} t \cos \left(\omega_{0} t+\gamma\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Translating into $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
& x=A \cos \Omega_{z} t \cos \left(\omega_{0} t+\gamma\right)  \tag{5.14}\\
& y=A \sin \Omega_{z} t \cos \left(\omega_{0} t+\gamma\right)
\end{align*}
$$

Assuming the pendulum's frequency is much higher than Earth's rotational frequency, $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{0} \gg$ $\Omega_{z}$, one can see that the plane of the pendulum simply precesses with angular velocity $\Omega_{z}$. This means that in this limit the pendulum oscillates only in the $x$-direction with frequency many times before the phase $\Omega_{z} t$ becomes noticeable. Eventually, when $\Omega_{z} t=\pi / 2$, the motion is along the $\boldsymbol{y}$-direction. If you were at the north pole, the motion would switch from the $x$-direction to the $\boldsymbol{y}$ direction every 6 hours. Away from the north pole, $\Omega_{z} \neq|\vec{\Omega}|$ and the precession frequency is less. At the equator it does not precess at all. If one were to repeat for the solutions where $\boldsymbol{A}=\mathbf{0}$ and $\boldsymbol{B} \neq \mathbf{0}$ in Eq. (5.13), one would look at motions that started in the $\boldsymbol{y}$-direction, then precessed toward the $-\boldsymbol{x}$ direction. Linear combinations of the two sets of solutions give pendulum motions that resemble ellipses rather than simple back-and-forth motion.

### 5.5 Exercises

1. Consider a pail of water spinning about a vertical axis at the center of the pail with frequency $\boldsymbol{\omega}$. Find the height of the water (within a constant) as a function the radius $r_{\perp}$ from the axis of rotation. Use the concept of a centrifugal potential in the rotating frame.
2. A high-speed cannon shoots a projectile with an initial velocity of $1000 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}$ in the east direction. The cannon is situated in Minneapolis (latitude of 45 degrees) The projectile velocity is nearly horizontal and it hits the ground after a distance $x=3000 \mathrm{~m}$. Find the alteration of the point of impact in the north-south $(\boldsymbol{y})$ direction due to the Coriolis force. Assume the effect is small so that you can approximate the eastward ( $\boldsymbol{x}$ ) component of the velocity as being constant. Be sure to indicate whether the deflection is north or south.
3. Someone wishes to use a Foucault pendulum as a crude clock. If the person lives in Minneapolis (latitude of $45^{\circ}$ ), how much time will pass between having the pendulum swinging in the east-west direction until it swings in the north-south direction.

## 6 Lagrangians and the Calculus of Variations

### 6.1 Calculus of Variations and the Euler-Lagrange Equation

The usual minimization problem one faces involves taking a function $\boldsymbol{J}(\boldsymbol{y})$, then finding the single value $\boldsymbol{y}$ for which $\boldsymbol{J}$ is either a maximum or minimum. In multivariate calculus one also learns to solve problems where you minimize for multiple variables, $\boldsymbol{J}\left(\boldsymbol{y}_{1}, \boldsymbol{y}_{2}, \cdots \boldsymbol{y}_{n}\right)$, and finding the point $\left(y_{1} \cdots y_{n}\right)$ in $n$-dimensional space that maximizes or minimizes the function. Here, we consider what seems to be a much more ambitious problem. Imagine you have a function $\boldsymbol{J}\left(\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x}), \boldsymbol{y}^{\prime}(\boldsymbol{x}) ; \boldsymbol{x}\right)$, and you wish to find the extrema for an infinite number of values of $\boldsymbol{y}$, i.e. you vary $\boldsymbol{y}$ at each point $\boldsymbol{x}$. The function $\boldsymbol{J}$ will not only depend on $\boldsymbol{y}$ at each point $\boldsymbol{x}$, but also on the slope at each point, plus a possible additional dependence on $\boldsymbol{x}$. Note we are NOT finding an optimum value of $\boldsymbol{x}$, we are finding the set of optimum values of $\boldsymbol{y}$ at each point $\boldsymbol{x}$, or equivalently, finding the function $\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x})$.
One treats the function $\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x})$ as being unknown while minimizing

$$
J=\int_{x_{1}}^{x_{2}} d x f\left\{y(x), y^{\prime}(x) ; x\right\}
$$

Thus, we are minimizing $\boldsymbol{J}$ with respect to an infinite number of values of $\boldsymbol{y}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}}\right)$ at points $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$. As an additional criteria, we will assume that $\boldsymbol{y}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{1}\right)$ and $\boldsymbol{y}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)$ are fixed, which means we will only consider variations of $\boldsymbol{y}$ between the boundaries. The dependence on the derivative, $\boldsymbol{y}^{\prime}=$ $d y / d x$, is crucial because otherwise the solution would involve simply finding the one value of $\boldsymbol{y}$ that minimized $\boldsymbol{f}$, and $\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x})$ would equal a constant if there were no explicit $\boldsymbol{x}$ dependence. Furthermore, $\boldsymbol{y}$ wouldn't need to be continuous at the boundary.
The Euler equation is a differential equation for $\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x})$, that when solved, provides the required solution. For an extrema,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta J=\int_{x_{1}}^{x_{2}} d x\left\{\frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \delta y(x)+\frac{\partial f}{\partial y^{\prime}} \delta y^{\prime}(x)\right\}=0 \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

For ANY small $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x})$ at any point $\boldsymbol{x}$, the change should be zero if one is at an optimum function $\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x})$. Integrating the second term by parts,

$$
\begin{align*}
\delta J= & \int_{x_{1}}^{x_{2}} d x\left\{\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}-\frac{d}{d x}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial y^{\prime}}\right)\right\} \delta y(x)  \tag{6.2}\\
& +\left.\frac{\partial f}{\partial y^{\prime}} \delta y\right|_{x_{2}}-\left.\frac{\partial f}{\partial y^{\prime}} \delta y\right|_{x_{1}} \\
= & 0
\end{align*}
$$

Because $\boldsymbol{y}$ is not allowed to vary at the endpoints, $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{y}\left(x_{1}\right)=\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{y}\left(x_{2}\right)=0$, the middle line can be ignored. Also, this relation must hold for ANY $\delta \boldsymbol{y}$, so one can write the Euler equations (or sometimes called the Euler Lagrange equations)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}=\frac{d}{d x} \frac{\partial f}{\partial y^{\prime}} \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

This will yield a differential equations for $\boldsymbol{y}$. Combined with the boundary conditions,

$$
\begin{equation*}
y\left(x_{1}\right)=y_{1}, \quad y\left(x_{2}\right)=y_{2} \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

one can now solve the differential equations for $\boldsymbol{y}$. Because $f$ is only a function of $f^{\prime}$, not $f^{\prime \prime}$ or $f^{\prime \prime \prime}$, the $d / d x$ in Euler Lagrange equation can lead to terms involving $f^{\prime \prime}$, but not $f^{\prime \prime \prime}$. Thus, the equation will be a second-order differential equation (not a linear equation usually), and the two boundary conditions are sufficient to determine the entire function $\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x})$.

## Example 6.1: Bead on a Wire

Consider a particle constrained to move along a path (like a bead moving without friction on a wire) and you need to design a path from $\boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{y}=\mathbf{0}$ to some final point $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{f}}, \boldsymbol{y}_{f}$. Assume there is a constant force in the $\boldsymbol{x}$ direction, $\boldsymbol{F}_{\boldsymbol{x}}=\boldsymbol{m g}$. Design the path so that the time the bead travels is a minimum.
Solution: The net time is

$$
T=\int \frac{d \ell}{v}=\int_{0}^{x_{f}} d x \frac{\sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}}}{\sqrt{2 g x}}=\text { minimum }
$$

Here we made use of the fact that $\boldsymbol{d \ell}=\sqrt{\boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{x}^{2}+\boldsymbol{d y ^ { 2 }}}$ and that the velocity is determined by $\boldsymbol{K} \boldsymbol{E}=\boldsymbol{m} \boldsymbol{v}^{2} / \mathbf{2}=\boldsymbol{m g} \boldsymbol{x}$. The Euler equations can be applied if you first define the function as

$$
f\left(y, y^{\prime} ; x\right)=\frac{\sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}}}{\sqrt{x}}
$$

The equations are then

$$
\frac{d}{d x} \frac{\partial f}{\partial y^{\prime}}=0
$$

The simplification ensued from $\boldsymbol{f}$ not having any dependence on $\boldsymbol{y}$. Immediately, one sees that $\left(\partial / \partial y^{\prime}\right) f$ is a constant because its derivative vanishes. This yields the differential equation

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial y^{\prime}} f & =\frac{y^{\prime}}{x^{1 / 2}\left(1+y^{\prime 2}\right)^{1 / 2}} \\
& =(2 a)^{-1 / 2}
\end{aligned}
$$

because $\partial f / \partial y^{\prime}$ must be a constant. With some foresight we label $(2 a)^{-1 / 2}$. One can now solve for $\boldsymbol{y}^{\prime}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\left(y^{\prime}\right)^{2} & =2 a x\left(1+y^{\prime 2}\right) \\
y^{\prime} & =\sqrt{\frac{x}{2 a-x}}, \\
y(x) & =\int_{0}^{x} d x^{\prime} \frac{\sqrt{x^{\prime}}}{\sqrt{2 a-x^{\prime}}}=\int_{0}^{x} d x^{\prime} \frac{x^{\prime} d x^{\prime}}{\sqrt{2 a x^{\prime}-x^{\prime 2}}} \\
& =\frac{1}{2} \int_{0}^{x} d x \frac{\left(2 x^{\prime}-2 a\right)}{\left(2 a x^{\prime}-x^{\prime 2}\right)^{1 / 2}}+a \int_{0}^{x} \frac{d x^{\prime}}{\sqrt{2 a x^{\prime}-x^{\prime 2}}} \\
& =\frac{-1}{2} \int_{0}^{2 a x-x^{2}} \frac{d u}{\sqrt{u}}+a \int_{0}^{x} \frac{d x^{\prime}}{\sqrt{a^{2}-\left(x^{\prime}-a\right)^{2}}} \\
& =-\sqrt{2 a x-x^{2}}+a \cos ^{-1}(1-x / a) \tag{6.5}
\end{align*}
$$



This turns out to be the equation for a cycloid or a brachiostone. If you rolled a wheel of radius $\boldsymbol{a}$ down the $\boldsymbol{y}$ axis and followed a point on the rim, it would trace out a cycloid. Here, the constant $a$ must be chosen to match the boundary condition, $\boldsymbol{y}_{2}=\boldsymbol{y}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{2}\right)$. Figure 6.1 displays this shape with $\left(x_{f}, y_{f}\right)=(20,10)$. The parameter $a$ was adjusted in Eq. (6.5) so that the curve intersected the point as shown in the figure. You can see the textbook for more details, plus you get a chance to work with cycloids in the exercises at the end of this chapter.

### 6.2 Auxiliary Constraints

Sometimes an auxiliary constraint is added to the problem (beyond fixing the end poits $\boldsymbol{y}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}_{2}$ ). Just ahead, we will work on the example of a hanging chain. The shape of the curve minimizes the potential energy, under the constraint of a fixed length of chain. Before presenting such an example we first review the method of Lagrange multipliers as a method for finding minima or maxima under constraints.
Imagine a function $f\left(x_{1}, x_{2} \cdots x_{n}\right)$ for which you wish to find the minima. Additionally, you are given a constraint

$$
\begin{equation*}
C\left(x_{1} \cdots x_{n}\right)=0 \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

The usual condition for a minimum is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{i}}=0, \text { or } \nabla f=0 \tag{6.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

which would be $\boldsymbol{n}$ equations for the $\boldsymbol{n}$ variables. The gradient of a scalar is a vector, so you should think of $\nabla$ as $\vec{\nabla}$. However, the solution will likely not satisfy the constraint, i.e. the point at which $f\left(x_{1} \cdots x_{n}\right)$ has an extrema, may not be a point where $C\left(x_{1} \cdots x_{n}\right)=0$.
A necessary condition for the solution is that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla f \cdot \vec{\epsilon}=0 \tag{6.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

for any infinitesimal vector $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}$ if $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}$ satisfies the condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta C=\nabla C \cdot \vec{\epsilon}=0 \tag{6.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

That is to say if I take a small step in a direction that doesn't change the constraint, then $f$ must not change if it is an extrema. Not changing the constraint implies the step is orthogonal to $\nabla C$. As there are $\boldsymbol{n}$ dimensions of $\boldsymbol{x}$, the vector $\boldsymbol{\nabla} \boldsymbol{C}$ defines one direction, and $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}$ can be in any of the $n-1$ directions orthogonal to $\nabla C$. If $\nabla \boldsymbol{f} \cdot \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}=\mathbf{0}$ for ANY of the $\boldsymbol{n}-\mathbf{1}$ directions of $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}$ orthogonal to $\nabla C$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla f \| \nabla C \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because the two vectors are parallel you can say there must exist some constant $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nabla(f-\lambda C)=0 \tag{6.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ is known as a Lagrange multiplier. Satisfying Eq. (6.11) is a necessary, but not a sufficient condition. One could add a constant to the constraint and the gradient would not change. One must find the correct value of $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ that satisfies the constraint $\boldsymbol{C}=0$, rather than $\boldsymbol{C}=$ some other constant. The strategy is then to solve Eq. (6.11) then adjust $\lambda$ until one finds the $x_{1} \cdots x_{n}$ that gives $C\left(x_{1} \cdots x_{n}\right)=0$.
The method of Lagrange multipliers is counter-intuitive to one's intuition to use the constraint to reduce the dimensionality of the problem. Normally, minimizing a function of $\boldsymbol{n}$ variables, leads to $\boldsymbol{n}$ equations and $\boldsymbol{n}$ unknowns. A constraint could be used, by substitution, to replace the $\boldsymbol{n}$ variables with $\boldsymbol{n}-\mathbf{1}$ variables. Instead, we add an unknown parameter, $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$, and change the equation to $n+1$ equations with $n+1$ unknowns, with the extra unknown being the Lagrange multiplier $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$. Often, it is rather easy to solve for $x_{1} \cdots x_{n}$. Then one is left with the usually difficult problem of finding $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$, often requiring the solution of a transcendental equation.

## Example 6.2: Lagrange Multiplier Practice

As an example of using Lagrange multipliers for a standard optimization formula we attempt to maximize the following function,

$$
F\left(x_{1} \cdots x_{n}\right)=-\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_{i} \ln \left(x_{i}\right)
$$

with respect to the $\boldsymbol{n}$ variables $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$. With no constraints, each $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$ would maximize the function for

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{d x_{j}}\left[-\sum_{i} x_{i} \ln \left(x_{i}\right)\right] & =0 \\
-\ln \left(x_{j}\right)-1 & =0, \quad x_{j}=e^{-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

Now, we repeat the problem but with two constraints,

$$
\sum_{i} x_{i}=1, \quad \sum_{i} x_{i} \epsilon_{i}=E .
$$

Here, $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$ and $\boldsymbol{E}$ are fixed constants. We go forward by finding the extrema for

$$
G\left(x_{1} \cdots x_{n}\right)=F-\alpha \sum_{i} x_{i}-\beta \sum_{i} \epsilon_{i} x_{i}=\sum_{i}\left\{-x_{i} \ln \left(x_{i}\right)-\alpha x_{i}-\beta \epsilon_{i} x_{i}\right\}
$$

There are two Lagrange multipliers, $\alpha$ and $\boldsymbol{\beta}$, corresponding to the two constraints. One then solves for the extrema

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{d x_{j}} G & =0 \\
& =-\ln \left(x_{j}\right)-1-\alpha-\beta \epsilon_{j} \\
x_{j} & =\exp \left\{-1-\alpha-\beta \epsilon_{j}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

For any given $\alpha$ and $\beta$ this provides a solution for constraining $\sum_{i} x_{i}$ and $\sum_{i} \epsilon_{i} x_{i}$ to some values, just not the values of unity and $\boldsymbol{E}$ that you wish. One would then have to search for the correct values by adjusting $\alpha$ and $\beta$ until the constraint are actually matched by solving a transcendental equation. Although this can be complicated, it is certainly less expensive than searching over all $N$ values of $\boldsymbol{x}_{i}$. This particular example corresponds to maximizing the entropy for a system, $S=-\sum_{i} x_{i} \ln \left(x_{i}\right)$, where $x_{i}$ is the probability of the system being in a particular discrete level $i$ that has energy $\epsilon_{i}$. One wishes to maximize the entropy subject to the constraints that the probabilities sum to unity and the average energy has some given value. The result that $x_{i} \sim e^{-\beta \epsilon_{i}}$ demonstrates the origin of the Boltzmann factor, with the inverse temperature $\beta=1 / T$.

Lagrange multipliers also assist with the Euler-Lagrange equation. If one breaks an interval $x_{1}<x<x_{2}$ into a large number $n \rightarrow \infty$ points separated by $d x$, the Euler-Lagrange equation involves finding the $n$ values $y_{i}$ at each point so that $\sum_{i} d x f\left\{y_{i}, y_{i}^{\prime}=\left(y_{i+1}-y_{i-1}\right) /(2 d x)\right\}$ is maximized for some given function $f$. If an additional auxiliary constraint is added, also some function of the $\boldsymbol{n}$ values $\boldsymbol{y}_{i}$, one can use the method of Lagrange multipliers. In the constraint can also be written as some function of $C\left(y_{i}, y_{i}^{\prime}\right)$, then one simply adds a term $\lambda C\left(y, y^{\prime}\right)$ to the function $f$ and uses the Euler-Lagrange equation to find the extrema of.

$$
\begin{equation*}
J=\int_{x_{1}}^{x_{2}} d x f\left\{y(x), y^{\prime}(x), x\right\}-\lambda C\left\{y(x), y^{\prime}(x), x\right\} \tag{6.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

the one difference being that

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left\{y(x), y^{\prime}(x), x\right\} \rightarrow f\left\{y(x), y^{\prime}(x), x\right\}-\lambda C\left\{y(x), y^{\prime}(x), x\right\} \tag{6.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

in Eq. (6.3).

## Example 6.3: Hanging Chain

Consider a chain of length $L$ and mass per unit length $\kappa$ that hangs from point $x=0, y=0$ to point $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{f}}, \boldsymbol{y}_{\boldsymbol{f}}$. The shape must minimize the potential energy. Find general expressions for the shape in terms of three constants which must be chosen to match $\boldsymbol{y}(0)=0, \boldsymbol{y}\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{f}\right)=\boldsymbol{y}_{f}$ and the fixed length. Equivalently, one finds the function $\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x})$ that provides an extrema for the integral,
Solution: One must minimize

$$
\int d \ell \kappa g y-\lambda \int d \ell=\int_{0}^{x_{f}} d x \sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}} \kappa g y-\lambda \int_{0}^{x_{f}} d x \sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}} .
$$

Here $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ is the Lagrange multiplier associated with constraining the length of the chain. The
constrained length $L$ appears nowhere in the expression. Instead, one solves for form of the answer, then adjusts $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ to give the correct length. For the purposes of the Euler-Lagrange minimization one considers the function

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(y, y^{\prime} ; x\right)=\kappa g y \sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}}-\lambda \sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}} \tag{6.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$ is an unknown constant and because minimizing a function multiplied by a constant is the same as minimizing the function, we can equivlently minimize the integral using the function

$$
\begin{align*}
\tilde{f}\left(y, y^{\prime} ; x\right) & =y \sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}}-\tilde{\lambda} \sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}}  \tag{6.15}\\
\tilde{\lambda} & \equiv \frac{\lambda}{\kappa g}
\end{align*}
$$

The Euler-Lagrange equations then become

$$
\frac{d}{d x}\left\{\frac{y^{\prime}}{\sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}}} y-\tilde{\lambda} \frac{y^{\prime}}{\sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}}}\right\}=\sqrt{1+y^{\prime 2}}
$$

Here, we will guess at the form of the solution,

$$
y^{\prime}=\sinh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right], \quad y=a \cosh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right]+y_{0}
$$

Plugging into the Euler-Lagange equations,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{d}{d x}\left\{\left(a \cosh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right]+y_{0}\right) \frac{\sinh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right]}{\cosh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right]}-\tilde{\lambda} \frac{\sinh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right]}{\cosh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right]}\right\} \\
&=\cosh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right] \\
& \frac{d}{d x}\left\{\left(y_{0}-\tilde{\lambda}\right) \tanh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right]\right\}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

This solution works if $\boldsymbol{y}_{0}=\tilde{\lambda}$. So the general form of the solution is

$$
y=\tilde{\lambda}+a \cosh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right]
$$

One must find $\tilde{\lambda}, x_{0}$ and $a$ to satisfy three conditions, $\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x}=0)=0, y\left(x=x_{f}\right)=y_{f}$ and that the length is $\boldsymbol{L}$. For a hanging chain $\boldsymbol{a}$ is positive. A solution with negative $\boldsymbol{a}$ would represent a maximum of the potential energy. A notable property of the solution is that once you define the length and the end-point positions $\boldsymbol{y}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}_{2}$, the solution does not depend on $\kappa$ or $\boldsymbol{g}$. Thus, the shape of the chain would be the same if you took it to the moon. These solutions are known as catenaries, http:/ /en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Catenary.

### 6.3 Lagrangians

Lagrangians represent a powerful method for solving problems that would be nearly impossible by direct application of Newton's third law, $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{F}}=\boldsymbol{m} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{a}}$. The method works well for problems where a system is well described by a few generalized coordinates. A generalized coordinate might be the angle describing the position of a pendulum. This one angle takes the place of using $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ to describe the position of the pendulum, then applying a clumsy constraint.
The Lagrangian equations of motion can be derived from the principle of least action, where the action $S$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
S=\int d t L(q, \dot{q}, t) \tag{6.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{q}$ is some coordinate that describes the orientation of a system and the Lagrangian $\boldsymbol{L}$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
L=T-U \tag{6.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

the difference of the kinetic and potential energies. Minimizing the action through the EulerLagrange equations gives the Lagrangian equations of motion,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}=\frac{\partial L}{\partial q} \tag{6.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

We begin with two simple examples, neither of which gains from the Lagrangian approach.

## Example 6.4: Lagrangian Treatment of a Spring

Consider a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ connected to a spring with stiffness $\boldsymbol{k}$. Derive the Lagrangian equations of motion.

## Solution:

$$
\begin{aligned}
L & =\frac{1}{2} m \dot{x}^{2}-\frac{1}{2} k x^{2} \\
\frac{d}{d t} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{x}} & =\frac{\partial L}{\partial x} \\
m \ddot{x} & =-k x
\end{aligned}
$$

## Example 6.5: Eq.s of Motion for Pendulum

Derive the Lagrangian equations of motion for a pendulum of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ and length $\ell$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
L & =\frac{m}{2} \ell^{2} \dot{\theta}^{2}-m g \ell(1-\cos \theta) \\
\frac{d}{d t} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\theta}} & =\frac{\partial L}{\partial \theta} \\
m \ell^{2} \ddot{\theta} & =-m g \ell \sin \theta \\
\ddot{\theta} & =-\frac{g}{\ell} \sin \theta \\
\ddot{\theta} & \approx-\frac{g}{\ell} \theta
\end{aligned}
$$

### 6.4 Proving Lagrange's Equations of Motion from Newton's Laws

Lagrange's equations of motion can only be applied for the following conditions:

1. The potential energy is a function of the generalized coordinates $\boldsymbol{q}_{i}$, but not of $\dot{\boldsymbol{q}}_{i}$.
2. The relation between the original coordinates $\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}, \boldsymbol{z \cdots}$ and the generalized coordinates does not depend on $\dot{\boldsymbol{q}}_{i}$, e.g. $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{q}, \boldsymbol{t})$ not $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{q}, \dot{\boldsymbol{q}}, \boldsymbol{t})$.
3. Any constraints used to reduce the number of degrees of freedom are functions of $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{q}}$, but not of $\dot{\vec{q}}$.
4. The motion is not dissipative (no damping or friction).

Going forward with the proof, consider $\boldsymbol{x}_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{q}_{1}, \boldsymbol{q}_{2} \cdots, \boldsymbol{t}\right)$ and look at the l.h.s. of Lagrange's equations of motion.

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial T}{\partial \dot{q}_{j}} & =\sum_{i} \frac{\partial T}{\partial \dot{x}_{i}} \frac{\partial \dot{x}_{i}}{\partial \dot{q}_{j}}+\sum_{i} \frac{\partial T}{\partial x_{i}} \frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial \dot{q}_{j}}  \tag{6.19}\\
& =\sum_{i} m \dot{x}_{i} \frac{\partial \dot{x}_{i}}{\partial \dot{q}_{j}} \\
& =\sum_{i} m \dot{x}_{i} \frac{\left.\left(\delta x_{i} / \delta t\right)\right|_{\text {fixed } q_{j^{\prime} \neq j}}}{\delta q_{j} / \delta t} \\
& =\sum_{i} m \dot{x}_{i} \frac{\left.\delta x_{i}\right|_{\text {fixed } q_{j^{\prime} \neq j}}}{\delta q_{j}} \\
& =\sum_{i} m \dot{x}_{i} \frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial q_{j}}
\end{align*}
$$

In the first line we used the fact that $\boldsymbol{T}$ does not depend on $\boldsymbol{x}$. Continuing with taking the derivative of $\boldsymbol{U}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
-\frac{\partial U}{\partial \dot{q}_{j}}=-\sum_{i} \frac{\partial U}{\partial x_{i}} \frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial \dot{q}_{j}}=0 \tag{6.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the first line above we used the fact that $\boldsymbol{U}$ does not depend on $\dot{\boldsymbol{x}}$ then we used the second condition that $\boldsymbol{x}$ does not depend on $\dot{\boldsymbol{q}}$. Adding the two pieces together, then taking the derivative w.r.t. time,

$$
\frac{d}{d t} \frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{q}}(T-U)=\sum_{i} m \ddot{x}_{i} \frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial q_{j}}+\sum_{i} m \dot{x}_{i} \frac{\partial \dot{x}_{i}}{\partial q_{j}}
$$

Now, we consider the r.h.s. of Lagrange's equations. Because the kinetic energy depends only on $\dot{x}$ and not $\boldsymbol{x}$, and because the potential depends on $\boldsymbol{x}$ but not $\dot{\boldsymbol{x}}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial}{\partial q_{j}}(T-U) & =\sum_{i} \frac{\partial T}{\partial \dot{x}_{i}} \frac{\partial \dot{x}_{i}}{\partial q_{j}}-\sum_{i} \frac{\partial U}{\partial x_{i}} \frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial q_{j}}  \tag{6.21}\\
& =\sum_{i} m \dot{x}_{i} \frac{\partial \dot{x}_{i}}{\partial q_{j}}-\sum_{i} \frac{\partial U}{\partial x_{i}} \frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial q_{j}}
\end{align*}
$$

Using the fact that $\boldsymbol{m} \ddot{\boldsymbol{x}}_{\boldsymbol{i}}=-\left(\boldsymbol{\partial} / \boldsymbol{\partial} \boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}}\right) \boldsymbol{U}$, one can see that the bottom expressions in Eq.s (6.19) and (6.21) are identical,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \frac{\partial}{\partial \dot{q}_{i}}(T-U)=\frac{\partial}{\partial q_{i}}(T-U) \tag{6.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 6.5 Lagrangian Examples

Two examples are presented here. In the first, there are two generalized coordinates, but the two equations of motion can be reduced to one through conservation laws (angular momentum in this case). In the second, there is a time-dependent constraint.

## Example 6.6: Motion on Surface of Cone

Consider a cone of half angle $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ standing on its tip at the origin. The surface of the cone is defined as

$$
r=\sqrt{x^{2}+y^{2}}=z \tan \alpha
$$

Find the equations of motion for a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ moving along the surface under the influence of a constant gravitational force, $-\boldsymbol{m g} \boldsymbol{g} \hat{\boldsymbol{z}}$. For generalized coordinates use the azimuthal angle $\phi$ and $r$.

## Solution:

The kinetic energy is

$$
\begin{aligned}
T & =\frac{1}{2} m r^{2} \dot{\theta}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} m\left(\dot{r}^{2}+\dot{z}^{2}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{2} m r^{2} \dot{\theta}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} m \dot{r}^{2}\left(1+\cot ^{2} \alpha\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{2} m r^{2} \dot{\theta}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} m \dot{r}^{2} \csc ^{2} \alpha .
\end{aligned}
$$

The potential energy is

$$
U=m g r \cot \alpha
$$

so Lagrange's equations give

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{d t}\left(m r^{2} \dot{\theta}\right) & =0 \\
\frac{d}{d t}\left(m \csc ^{2} \alpha \dot{r}\right) & =m r \dot{\theta}^{2}-m g \cot \alpha \\
\ddot{r} & =r \dot{\theta}^{2} \sin ^{2} \alpha-g \cos \alpha \sin \alpha
\end{aligned}
$$

The first equation is a statement of the conservation of angular momentum with $L=m \boldsymbol{r}^{2} \dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$, so the second equation can also be expressed as

$$
\ddot{r}=\frac{L^{2} \sin ^{2} \alpha}{m^{2} r^{3}}-g \sin \alpha \cos \alpha
$$

## Example 6.7: Bead Confined to Parabola

A bead slides along a wire bent in the shape of a parabola,

$$
z=\frac{1}{2} k r^{2}, r^{2}=x^{2}+y^{2}
$$

Also, the parabolic wire is rotating about the $z$ axis with angular velocity $\omega$. Derive the equations of motion. Are there any stable configurations?

## Solution:

Using the fact that

$$
\dot{z}=\dot{r} \frac{\partial z}{\partial r}=k r \dot{r}
$$

the kinetic and potential energies are

$$
\begin{aligned}
T & =\frac{1}{2} m\left(\dot{r}^{2}+\dot{z}^{2}+r^{2} \omega^{2}\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{2} m\left(\dot{r}^{2}+(k r \dot{r})^{2}+r^{2} \omega^{2}\right) \\
U & =m g k r^{2} / 2
\end{aligned}
$$

The equations of motion are then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{d t}\left\{m \dot{r}\left(1+k^{2} r^{2}\right)\right\} & =-m g k r+m k^{2} \dot{r}^{2} r+m \omega^{2} r \\
\ddot{r} & =\frac{-g k r+\omega^{2} r-k^{2} \dot{r}^{2} r}{1+k^{2} r^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

For a stable configuration, there needs to be a solution with $\dot{\boldsymbol{r}}=0$ and $\ddot{\boldsymbol{r}}=0$. This can only happen at $r=0$, and then for the acceleration to be inward for small deviations of $r$ one needs to have $\boldsymbol{g} \boldsymbol{k}>\boldsymbol{\omega}^{2}$. If $\omega^{2}>\boldsymbol{g} \boldsymbol{k}$ the bead will move outward indefinitely.

### 6.6 Small Vibrations and Normal Modes

For a system described by some one dimensional coordinate $\boldsymbol{x}$, one can often find a minimum of the potential. For small oscillations of a mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ about the minimum one can find the oscillating frequency by identifying the curvature of potential as a spring constant, which then yields the frequency,

$$
\begin{equation*}
k_{\mathrm{eff}}=\frac{d^{2} V}{d x^{2}}, \omega=\sqrt{k_{\mathrm{eff}}} m \tag{6.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the particle moved in two dimensions, one could consider the curvature in two dimensions. But, in this case one can take derivatives with respect to either $\boldsymbol{x}$ or $\boldsymbol{y}$. These derivatives about
the minimum of the potential can be expressed as

$$
\begin{align*}
k_{x x} & =\frac{\partial^{2} V}{\partial x^{2}}  \tag{6.24}\\
k_{y y} & =\frac{\partial^{2} V}{\partial y^{2}} \\
k_{x y} & =k_{y x}=\frac{\partial^{2} V}{\partial x \partial y} \\
V(x, y) & \approx V_{0}+\frac{1}{2} k_{x x}\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}+\frac{1}{2} k_{y y}\left(y-y_{0}\right)^{2}+k_{x y}\left(x-x_{0}\right)\left(y-y_{0}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

If there were no off-diagonal term, one can see that the $\boldsymbol{x}$ and the $\boldsymbol{y}$ motion act independently, and that for small oscillations the $\boldsymbol{x}$-motion behaves like a harmonic oscillator with spring constant $\boldsymbol{k}_{\boldsymbol{x} \boldsymbol{x}}$ while the $\boldsymbol{y}$-motion oscillates as if the spring constant is $\boldsymbol{k}_{\boldsymbol{y} \boldsymbol{y}}$.
The purpose of this sub-section is to consider the more general case. Not only might there be off-diagonal terms, but the coordinates might be an angle or some other generalized coordinate. Further, the kinetic energy might also have a more complicated form. Nonetheless, if there are $\boldsymbol{N}$ degrees of freedom there are $\boldsymbol{N}$ independent sets of motion, each with its own frequency. The fact that these coordinates are perpendicular to one another inspires that they are referred to as "normal" modes. Finding the normal modes and their frequencies for problems with generalized coordinates is a common problem, applying some straight-forward physics principles along with linear algebra.
Two examples are provided for solving for normal modes. These are solutions with multiple generalized coordinates, where the motion is that of simple harmonic motion. However, the motion is only simple for a particular set of coordinates $\boldsymbol{q}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{2}}$,

$$
\begin{align*}
& q_{1}=A \cos \left(\omega_{1} t\right)  \tag{6.25}\\
& q_{2}=B \cos \left(\omega_{2} t\right)
\end{align*}
$$

while it is not necessarily simple in other coordinates. For example if $\boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{q}_{1}+\boldsymbol{q}_{2}$, and $\boldsymbol{y}=$ $\boldsymbol{q}_{1}-\boldsymbol{q}_{2}$, the $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ motions will contain mixtures of multiple frequencies. For many problems, or in the limit of small vibrations about a minimum, there is some coordinate system where the motion is simple. These are normal modes. Characterizing the normal modes involves finding the frequencies, $\omega_{i}$, and the coordinate system where the motion is simple for each coordinate. This involves finding the direction, or the linear combination of $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$ that form the coordinates $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$ in which the motion is that of a single oscillator in each coordinate.
For a first example, we consider a system of springs, where we write the Lagrangian, then find the normal modes. For the second example, a double pendulum is considered. In this case, one must first make a small angle expansion before finding the modes. In principle, problems could have the same number of normal modes a degrees of freedom. For example, a system of 7 particles moving in three dimensions has 21 degrees of freedom. However, some of the degrees of freedom do not have oscillatory behavior. For example, for a rigid body in free space, the angles describing the orientation evolve, but do not oscillate. Also, the center-of-mass coordinates of a system of particles isolated from outside particles moves at constant velocity. One can also describe these as normal modes, but acknowledge that their characteristic frequency is zero, as there are no restoring forces.


Figure 6.2: For Example 6.7, three masses connected by two springs. The center-of-mass motion is unaffected by the springs.

## Example 6.8: Three Masses Connected by Springs

Consider two springs, whose relaxed lengths are $\ell$, connected to three masses as depicted in Fig. 6.2. Describe the two normal modes of the motion. We can write the Lagrangian as

$$
\mathcal{L}=\frac{m}{2} \dot{x}_{1}^{2}+m \dot{x}_{2}^{2}+\frac{m}{2} \dot{x}_{3}^{2}-\frac{k}{2}\left(x_{2}-x_{1}-\ell\right)^{2}-\frac{k}{2}\left(x_{3}-x_{2}-\ell\right)^{2}
$$

There are three coordinates, thus there are three equations of motion,

$$
\begin{aligned}
m \ddot{x}_{1} & =-k\left(x_{1}-x_{2}+\ell\right) \\
2 m \ddot{x}_{2} & =-k\left(x_{2}-x_{1}-\ell\right)-k\left(x_{2}-x_{3}+\ell\right) \\
& =-k\left(2 x_{2}-x_{1}-x_{3}\right) \\
m \ddot{x}_{3} & =-k\left(x_{3}-x_{2}+\ell\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

This is a bit complicated because the center-of-mass motion does not easily separate from the three equations. Instead, choose the following coordinates,

$$
\begin{aligned}
X & =\frac{x_{1}+2 x_{2}+x_{3}}{4} \\
q_{1} & =x_{1}-x_{2}+\ell \\
q_{3} & =x_{3}-x_{2}-\ell
\end{aligned}
$$

In these coordinates the potential energy only involves two coordinates,

$$
U=\frac{k}{2}\left(q_{1}^{2}+q_{3}^{2}\right)
$$

To express the kinetic energy express $\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, \boldsymbol{x}_{\mathbf{2}}$ and $\boldsymbol{x}_{\mathbf{3}}$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{X}, \boldsymbol{q}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{q}_{3}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& x_{1}=\left(3 q_{1}-q_{3}-4 \ell+4 X\right) / 4 \\
& x_{2}=\left(4 X-q_{1}-q_{3}\right) / 4 \\
& x_{3}=\left(3 q_{3}-q_{1}+4 \ell+4 X\right) / 4
\end{aligned}
$$

The kinetic energy and Lagrangian are them

$$
\begin{aligned}
T & =\frac{m}{2} \frac{1}{16}\left(3 \dot{q}_{1}-\dot{q}_{3}+4 \dot{X}\right)^{2}+m \frac{1}{16}\left(4 \dot{X}-\dot{q}_{1}-\dot{q}_{3}\right)^{2}+\frac{m}{2} \frac{1}{16}\left(3 \dot{q}_{3}-\dot{q}_{1}+4 \dot{X}\right)^{2} \\
& =\frac{3 m}{8}\left(\dot{q}_{1}^{2}+\dot{q}_{3}^{2}\right)-\frac{m}{4} \dot{q}_{1} \dot{q}_{3}+2 m \dot{X}^{2} \\
\mathcal{L} & =\frac{3 m}{8}\left(\dot{q}_{1}^{2}+\dot{q}_{3}^{2}\right)-\frac{m}{4} \dot{q}_{1} \dot{q}_{3}+2 m \dot{X}^{2}-\frac{k}{2} q_{1}^{2}-\frac{k}{2} q_{3}^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The three equations of motion are then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{3}{4} m \ddot{q}_{1}-\frac{1}{4} m \ddot{q}_{3} & =-k q_{1} \\
\frac{3}{4} m \ddot{q}_{3}-\frac{1}{4} m \ddot{q}_{1} & =-k q_{3} \\
4 m \ddot{X} & =0
\end{aligned}
$$

One could obtain the same result by summing the equations of motion for $\boldsymbol{x}_{1}, 2 \boldsymbol{x}_{2}$ and $\boldsymbol{x}_{\mathbf{3}}$ above. The last equation simply states that the center-of-mass velocity is fixed. Mathematically, it can be considered a normal mode with zero frequency.
The second two equations are more complicated. To solve them, we assume a form

$$
\begin{aligned}
q_{1} & =A e^{i \omega t} \\
q_{3} & =B e^{i \omega t}
\end{aligned}
$$

Because this is a linear equation, we can multiply the solution by a constant and it will still be a solution. Thus, we can set $\boldsymbol{B}=1$, then solve for $\boldsymbol{A}$, effectively solving for $\boldsymbol{A} / \boldsymbol{B}$. Putting this guess into the equations of motion,

$$
\begin{aligned}
-\frac{3}{4} \frac{A}{B} \omega^{2}+\frac{1}{4} \omega^{2} & =-\omega_{0}^{2} \frac{A}{B} \\
-\frac{3}{4} \omega^{2}+\frac{1}{4} \frac{A}{B} \omega^{2} & =-\omega_{0}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

This is two equations and two unknowns, $\omega^{2}$ and $\boldsymbol{A} / \boldsymbol{B}$. Substituting for $\boldsymbol{A} / \boldsymbol{B}$ gives a quadratic equation,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\omega^{4}-3 \omega_{0}^{2} \omega^{2}+2 \omega_{0}^{4} & =0 \\
\omega_{0}^{2} & \equiv k / m
\end{aligned}
$$

The two solutions are

$$
\text { (1) } \omega=\omega_{0}, \quad A=-B
$$

$$
\text { (2) } \omega=\omega_{0} \sqrt{2}, \quad A=B
$$

The first solution corresponds to the two outer masses moving in opposite directions, in sync, with the middle mass fixed. The second solution has both outer masses moving in the same
direction, but with the center mass moving opposite. These two solutions are referred to as normal modes, and are characterized by their frequency and by the linear combinations of coordinates that oscillate together. In general, the solution is a linear combination of normal modes, which usually results in a chaotic looking motion. However, once the solution is expressed in terms of the normal modes, each of which oscillates independently in a simple manner, one can better understand the motion. Further, the frequencies of these modes represent the natural resonant frequencies of the system. This is important in the construction of many structures, such as bridges or vehicles.

## Example 6.9: Double Pendulum

Consider a double pendulum confined to the $\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{y}$ plane, where $\boldsymbol{y}$ is vertical. A mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ is connected to the ceiling with a massless string of length $\ell$. A second mass $m$ hangs from the first mass with an identical massless string of the same length. Using $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{2}$ to describe the orientations of the strings relative to the vertical axis, find the Lagrangian and derive the equations of motion, both for arbitrary angles and in the small-angle approximation. Finally, express the equations of motion in the limit of small oscillations.

## Solution:

The kinetic and potential energies are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
T & =\frac{1}{2} m \ell^{2} \dot{\theta}_{1}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} m\left\{\left(\ell \dot{\theta}_{1} \cos \theta_{1}+\ell \dot{\theta}_{2} \cos \theta_{2}\right)^{2}+\left(\ell \dot{\theta}_{1} \sin \theta_{1}+\ell \dot{\theta}_{2} \sin \theta_{2}\right)^{2}\right\} \\
& =\frac{1}{2} m \ell^{2}\left\{2 \dot{\theta}_{1}^{2}+\dot{\theta}_{2}^{2}+2 \dot{\theta}_{1} \dot{\theta}_{2} \cos \left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{2}\right)\right\} \\
U & =m g \ell\left(1-\cos \theta_{1}\right)+m g\left[\ell\left(1-\cos \theta_{1}\right)+\ell\left(1-\cos \theta_{2}\right)\right] \\
& =m g \ell\left(3-2 \cos \theta_{1}-\cos \theta_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Lagrange's equations for $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{\mathbf{1}}$ lead to

$$
\begin{aligned}
m \ell^{2} \frac{d}{d t}\left\{2 \dot{\theta}_{1}+\dot{\theta}_{2} \cos \left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{2}\right)\right\} & =-m \ell^{2} \dot{\theta}_{1} \dot{\theta}_{2} \sin \left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{2}\right)-2 m g \ell \sin \theta_{1} \\
2 \ddot{\theta}_{1}+\ddot{\theta}_{2} \cos \left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{2}\right)+\dot{\theta}_{2}^{2} \sin \left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{2}\right) & =-2 \omega_{0}^{2} \sin \theta_{1} \\
\omega_{0}^{2} & \equiv g / \ell
\end{aligned}
$$

and the equations for $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{2}$ are

$$
\begin{aligned}
m \ell^{2} \frac{d}{d t}\left\{\dot{\theta}_{2}+\dot{\theta}_{1} \cos \left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{2}\right)\right\} & =m \ell^{2} \dot{\theta}_{1} \dot{\theta}_{2} \sin \left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{2}\right)-m g \ell \sin \theta_{2} \\
\ddot{\theta}_{2}+\ddot{\theta}_{1} \cos \left(\theta_{1}-\theta_{2}\right) & =-\omega_{0}^{2} \sin \theta_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

For small oscillations, one can only consider terms linear in $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{2}$ or their derivatives,

$$
\begin{align*}
2 \ddot{\theta}_{1}+\ddot{\theta}_{2} & =-2 \omega_{0}^{2} \theta_{1}  \tag{6.26}\\
\ddot{\theta}_{1}+\ddot{\theta}_{2} & =-\omega_{0}^{2} \theta_{2}
\end{align*}
$$

To find the solutions, assume they are of the form $\theta_{1}=A e^{i \omega t}, \theta_{2}=B e^{i \omega t}$. Solve for $\omega$ and $A / B$, noting that $B$ is arbitrary.

Plug in the desired form and find

$$
\begin{aligned}
e^{i \omega t}\left(-2 \omega^{2} A-\omega^{2} B\right) & =e^{i \omega t}\left(-2 \omega_{0}^{2} A\right) \\
e^{i \omega t}\left(-\omega^{2} A-\omega^{2} B\right) & =e^{i \omega t}\left(-\omega_{0}^{2} B\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

We can treat $\boldsymbol{B}$ as arbitrary and set it to unity. When we find $\boldsymbol{A}$, it is the same as $\boldsymbol{A} / \boldsymbol{B}$ for arbitrary $\boldsymbol{B}$. This gives the equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
2 \omega^{2} A+\omega^{2} & =2 \omega_{0}^{2} A \\
\omega^{2} A+\omega^{2} & =\omega_{0}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

This is two equations and two unknowns, with the unknowns being $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and $\boldsymbol{A}$. Solving them leads to a quadratic equation with solutions

$$
\begin{aligned}
A & = \pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\
\omega^{2} & =\frac{\omega_{0}^{2}}{1 \pm 1 / \sqrt{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Again, these two solutions are the normal modes, and the general solution is a sum of the two solutions, with two arbitrary constants. For the angles $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{2}$ are:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\theta_{1} & =\frac{A_{+}}{\sqrt{2}} e^{i \omega_{+} t}, \theta_{2}=A_{+} e^{i \omega_{+} t} \\
\theta_{1} & =\frac{-A_{-}}{\sqrt{2}} e^{i \omega_{-} t}, \theta_{2}=A_{-} e^{i \omega_{-} t} \\
\omega_{ \pm} & =\omega_{0} \sqrt{\frac{1}{1 \pm 1 / \sqrt{2}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

One can also express the solution in vector notation, with the vectors having arbitrary amplitudes $\boldsymbol{A}_{+}$and $\boldsymbol{A}_{-}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \theta_{+}=\binom{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}}{1} A_{+} e^{i \omega_{+} t} \\
& \theta_{-}=\binom{\frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}}}{1} A_{-} e^{i \omega_{-} t}
\end{aligned}
$$

Here, the upper/lower components of the vector describe $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{1} / \boldsymbol{\theta}_{2}$ respectively.

### 6.7 Addressing the Small Oscillation Problem with Mutiple Degrees of Freedom with Linear Algebra

These problems can be treated as linear algebra exercises with $\boldsymbol{q}$ being a vector of generalized coordinates. Linear algebra is being used only sparingly. Nonetheless, in this course we describe
how this works for the curious student. In the limit of small vibrations, the equations of motion can usually be expressed in the form,

$$
M \ddot{\boldsymbol{q}}=-\boldsymbol{K} \boldsymbol{q}
$$

a form that looks like the spring equation. However, $\boldsymbol{q}$ is an $\boldsymbol{n}$-dimensional vector and $\boldsymbol{M}$ and $\boldsymbol{K}$ are $\boldsymbol{n} \times \boldsymbol{n}$ matrices.

## Example 6.10: Normal Modes for Double Pendulum with Linear Algebra

In the double pendulum example, the dimensionality is 2 and the $q$ refers to the $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{2}$, and the matrices for $\boldsymbol{M}$ and $\boldsymbol{K}$ can be read off Eq. (6.26),

$$
M=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
2 & 1 \\
1 & 1
\end{array}\right), \quad K=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
2 \omega_{0}^{2} & 0 \\
0 & \omega_{0}^{2}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Multiplying both sides of the equation by the inverse matrix $M^{-1}$,

$$
\ddot{\boldsymbol{q}}=-\left(M^{-1} K\right) \boldsymbol{q}
$$

Here,

$$
\begin{aligned}
M^{-1} & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & -1 \\
-1 & 2
\end{array}\right), \\
M^{-1} K & =\left(\begin{array}{cc}
2 & -1 \\
-2 & 2
\end{array}\right) \omega_{0}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

One can find a transformation, basically a rotation, that transforms to a frame where $\boldsymbol{M}^{\mathbf{- 1}} \boldsymbol{K}$ is diagonal. In this coordinate system the diagonal components of $\boldsymbol{M}^{-1} \boldsymbol{K}$ represent the squared frequencies of the normal modes,

$$
M^{-1} K \rightarrow-\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\omega_{+}^{2} & 0 \\
0 & \omega_{-}^{2}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and are known as "eigen" frequencies. The corresponding unit vectors,

$$
\binom{1}{0},\binom{0}{1}
$$

in the new coordinate system can be rotated back into the original frame, and become the solutions for the normal modes. These are then called "eigenvectors", which are the same as the normal modes. Finding the eigenfrequencies is performed by realizing that the determinant of a matrix is unchanged by the transformation between coordinate systems. Writing the equations of motion as an eigenvalue problem,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[A-\lambda_{i} \mathbb{I}\right] u_{i}=0, \quad A \equiv M^{-1} K, \lambda_{i} \equiv \omega_{i}^{2} \tag{6.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the coordinate system where $\boldsymbol{M}^{-1} \boldsymbol{K}$ is diagonal, and the forms for $\boldsymbol{u}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$ are simple this requires that in that system, the diagonal elements of $\boldsymbol{M}^{-1} K$ are the eigenvalues, $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{i}^{2}$. For each $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{\boldsymbol{i}}^{2}$, the determinant $\left|\boldsymbol{A}-\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{\boldsymbol{i}} \mathbb{I}\right|$ must vanish. This is then true in any coordinate system,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{det}[A-\lambda \mathbb{I}]=0 \tag{6.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

which for a $2 \times 2$ matrix becomes

$$
\begin{align*}
\left|\begin{array}{cc}
A_{11}-\lambda & A_{12} \\
A_{21} & A_{22}-\lambda
\end{array}\right| & =0  \tag{6.29}\\
A_{11} A_{22}-\lambda A_{11}-\lambda A_{22}+\lambda^{2}-A_{21} A_{12} & =0 \tag{6.30}
\end{align*}
$$

One can solve a quadratic equation for $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$, which gives two eigenvalues corresponding to $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{+}^{2}$ and $\omega_{-}^{2}$ found above. Choosing one of the eigenvalues, one can insert one of the eigenvalues $\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$ into Eq. (6.29) and solve for $\boldsymbol{u}_{i}$, then choose the other eigenvalue and solve for the other corresponding vector.
If this were a 3-dimensional set of equations, the determinant would include terms like $\lambda^{3}$ and would become a cubic equation with three eigenvalues. One would then solve for three eigenvectors. If one has a system with dimensionality $n>2$, one usually resorts to solving the problem numerically due to the messiness of the algebra. The main programming languages all have packages which readily diagonalize matrices and find eigenvectors and eigenvalues.

### 6.8 Conservation Laws

Energy is conserved only when the Lagrangian has no explicit dependence on time, i.e. $\boldsymbol{L}(\boldsymbol{q}, \dot{\boldsymbol{q}})$, not $\boldsymbol{L}(\boldsymbol{q}, \dot{\boldsymbol{q}}, \boldsymbol{t})$. To show this, we first define the Hamiltonian,

$$
\begin{equation*}
H=\sum_{i}\left(\dot{q}_{i} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_{i}}\right)-L \tag{6.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

After showing that $\boldsymbol{H}$ is conserved, i.e. $(\boldsymbol{d} / \boldsymbol{d t}) \boldsymbol{H}=0$, we then show that $\boldsymbol{H}$ can be identified with the total energy, $\boldsymbol{H}=\boldsymbol{T}+\boldsymbol{V}$.
One can see that $\boldsymbol{H}$ is conserved by applying first using the chain rule for $(\boldsymbol{d} / \boldsymbol{d t}) \boldsymbol{H}$ in Eq. (6.31), then applying Lagrange's equations,

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d}{d t} \boldsymbol{H} & =\sum_{i}\left\{\ddot{q}_{i} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_{i}}+\dot{q}_{i} \frac{d}{d t}\left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_{i}}\right)-\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_{i}} \ddot{q}_{i}-\frac{\partial L}{\partial q_{i}} \dot{q}_{i}\right\}  \tag{6.32}\\
& =\sum_{i}\left\{\ddot{q}_{i} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_{i}}+\dot{q}_{i} \frac{\partial L}{\partial q_{i}}-\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_{i}} \ddot{q}_{i}-\frac{\partial L}{\partial q_{i}} \dot{q}_{i}\right\} \\
& =0
\end{align*}
$$

These steps assumed that $\boldsymbol{L}$ had no explicit time dependence, i.e. $\boldsymbol{L}$ is a function of $\boldsymbol{q}$ and $\dot{\boldsymbol{q}}$, but not of $t$.
Next, we show that $L$ can be identified with the energy. Because $\boldsymbol{V}$ does not depend on $\dot{\boldsymbol{q}}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
H=\sum_{i} \frac{\partial T}{\partial \dot{q}_{i}} \dot{q}_{i}-T+V \tag{6.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the kinetic energy has a purely quadratic form in terms of $\dot{\boldsymbol{q}}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
T=\sum_{i j} A_{i j}(q) \dot{q}_{i} \dot{q}_{j} \tag{6.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

the Hamiltonian becomes

$$
\begin{align*}
H & =\sum_{i j} 2 A_{i j}(q) \dot{q}_{i} \dot{q}_{j}-\sum_{i j} A_{i j}(q) \dot{q}_{i} \dot{q}_{j}+V  \tag{6.35}\\
& =T+V
\end{align*}
$$

The proof that $\boldsymbol{H}$ equals the energy hinged on the fact that the kinetic energy was quadratic in $\dot{\boldsymbol{q}}$. This can be attributed to time-reversal symmetry. Because the Cartesian coordinates $\boldsymbol{x}_{\boldsymbol{i}}$ do not depend on $\dot{\boldsymbol{q}}_{i}$ or on time, $\dot{\boldsymbol{x}}_{i}=\left(\partial x_{i} / \partial q_{j}\right) \dot{\boldsymbol{q}}_{j}$. Thus, the kinetic energy, $\boldsymbol{T}=\boldsymbol{m} \dot{\boldsymbol{x}}_{i}^{2} / 2$, should be proportional to two powers of $\dot{\boldsymbol{q}}$, which validates the assumption in Eq. (6.34).
Here, energy conservation is predicated on the Lagrangian not having an explicit time dependence. Without an explicit time dependence the equations of motion are unchanged if one translates a fixed amount in time because the physics does not depend on when the clock starts. In contrast, the absolute time becomes relevant if there is an explicit time dependence. In fact, conservation laws can usually be associated with symmetries. In this case the translation symmetry in time leads to energy conservation.
For another example of how symmetry leads to conservation laws, consider a Lagrangian for a particle of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ moving in a two-dimensional plane where the generalized coordinates are the radius $r$ and the angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}$. The kinetic energy would be

$$
\begin{equation*}
T=\frac{1}{2} m\left\{\dot{r}^{2}+r^{2} \dot{\theta}^{2}\right\} \tag{6.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

and if the potential energy $\boldsymbol{V}(\boldsymbol{r})$ depends only on the radius $r$ and not on the angle, Lagrange's equations become

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d}{d t}(m \dot{r}) & =-\frac{\partial V}{\partial r}+m \dot{\theta}^{2} r  \tag{6.37}\\
\frac{d}{d t}\left(m r^{2} \dot{\theta}\right) & =0
\end{align*}
$$

The second equation implies that $\boldsymbol{m r ^ { 2 }} \dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ is a constant. Indeed, it is the angular momentum which is conserved for a radial force. Here, the conservation of angular momentum is associated with the independence of the physics to changes in $\boldsymbol{\theta}$, or in other words, rotational invariance. Once one knows the fact that $L=m r^{2} \dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ is conserved, it can be inserted into the equations of motion for $\dot{\boldsymbol{r}}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
m \ddot{r}=-\frac{\partial V}{\partial r}+\frac{L^{2}}{m r^{3}} \tag{6.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is related to Noether's theorem http:/ /en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Noether's_theorem, named after Emmy Noether, http:/ /en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Emmy_Noether. Simply stated, if the Lagrangian $L$ is independent of one of the generalized coordinates $q_{i}$, the quantity $\boldsymbol{\partial L} / \boldsymbol{\partial} \dot{q}_{i}$ is conserved,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_{i}}=0 \tag{6.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

Another easy example is in Cartesian coordinates where the potential depends only on $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ but not on $\boldsymbol{z}$. In that case, there is a translational symmetry. From Eq. (6.39), this translates into conservation of the momentum in the $\boldsymbol{z}$ direction.

## Example 6.11: Symmetry Arguments and Conservation Laws

Consider a pair of particles of mass $\boldsymbol{m}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{m}_{\mathbf{2}}$ where the potential is of the form

$$
U\left(\vec{r}_{1}, \vec{r}_{2}\right)=V_{a}\left(\left|m_{1} \vec{r}_{1}+m_{2} \vec{r}_{2}\right| /\left(m_{1}+m_{2}\right)\right)+V_{b}\left(\left|\vec{r}_{1}-\vec{r}_{2}\right|\right)
$$

Using symmetry arguments alone, are there any conserved components of the momentum? or of the angular momentum?
There is no translational invariance, hence there are no conserved components of the momentum. However, there is rotational invariance about any axis that goes through the origin. Hence, there is angular momentum conservation in all three directions. Symmetry arguments are great ways to recognize the existence of conserved quantities, but actually expressing them in terms of coordinates can be tricky. For instance, you may need to write the Lagrangian in terms of angles.

### 6.9 Exercises

1. Consider a hill whose height $\boldsymbol{y}$ is given as a function of the horizontal coordinate $\boldsymbol{x}$. Consider a segment of the hill from $x=0$ to $x=L$ with initial height $y(x=0)=0$ and whose final height is $\boldsymbol{y}(\boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{L})=-\boldsymbol{h}$. Transforming the last equation in Example 6.1 for a downward vertical force rather than a horizontal force,

$$
x=-\sqrt{-2 a y-y^{2}}+a \arccos (1+y / a)
$$

Consider a wheel of radius $\boldsymbol{a}$ rolling along the bottom of the $\boldsymbol{x}$ axis. Mark a point on the top of the wheel, which is originally at the origin, $\boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{y}=0$, when the top of the wheel touches the origin. As the wheel rolls by an angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ the marked point moves due to both the translation and the rotation of the wheel. The $\boldsymbol{y}$ coordinate of the marked point is

$$
y=-a(1-\cos \theta)
$$

whereas the $\boldsymbol{x}$ coordinate is

$$
x=a \theta-a \sin \theta
$$

The first term is due to the horizontal translation of the axis, while the second term arises from the rotation of the wheel. Re-express these two equations to find $\boldsymbol{x}(\boldsymbol{y})$.
2. Consider a chain of length $L$ that hangs from two supports of equal height stretched from $\boldsymbol{x}=-\boldsymbol{X}$ to $\boldsymbol{x}=+\boldsymbol{X}$. The general solution for a catenary is

$$
y=\lambda+a \cosh \left[\left(x-x_{0}\right) / a\right]
$$

(a) Using symmetry arguments, what is $x_{0}$ ?
(b) Express the length $L$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{X}$ and $\boldsymbol{a}$.
(c) Numerically solve the transcendental equation above to find $a$ in terms of $L=10 \mathrm{~m}$ and $X=4 \mathrm{~m}$.
3. Consider a mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ connected to a spring with spring constant $\boldsymbol{k}$. Rather than being fixed, the other end of the spring oscillates with frequency $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and amplitude $\boldsymbol{A}$. For a generalized coordinate, use the displacement of the mass from its relaxed position and call it $\boldsymbol{y}=$ $\boldsymbol{x}-\ell-\boldsymbol{A} \cos \omega t$. In this system the potential energy of the spring is $\boldsymbol{k \boldsymbol { y } ^ { 2 } / \mathbf { 2 }}$.
(a) Write the kinetic energy in terms of the generalized coordinate.
(b) Write down the Lagrangian.
(c) Find the equations of motion for $\boldsymbol{y}$.
4. Consider a bead of mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ on a circular wire of radius $\boldsymbol{R}$. Assume a force $\boldsymbol{k} \boldsymbol{x}$ acts on the bead, where $\boldsymbol{x}$ and $\boldsymbol{y}$ axes run through the center of the circle. Using $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ as the generalized coordinate (measured relative to the $x$ axis),
(a) Write the Lagrangian in terms of $\boldsymbol{\theta}$.
(b) Find the equations of motion.
5. Consider a pendulum of length $\ell$ with all the mass $m$ at its end. The pendulum is allowed to swing freely in both directions. Using $\phi$ to describe the azimuthal angle about the $z$ axis and $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ to measure the angular deviation of the pendulum from the downward direction, address the following questions:
(a) If the pendulum is initially moving horizontally with velocity $\boldsymbol{v}_{0}$ and angle $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{\mathbf{0}}=\mathbf{9 0 ^ { \circ }}$ (horizontal), use energy and angular momentum conservation to find the minimum angles of $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{\text {min }}$ subtended by the pendulum. (Note that the angle will oscillate between $90^{\circ}$ and the minimum angle.
(b) Write the Lagrangian using $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ and $\phi$ as generalized coordinates.
(c) Write the equations of motion for $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ and $\phi$.
(d) Rewrite the equations of motion for $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ using angular momentum conservation to eliminate and reference to $\phi$.
(e) Find the value of $L$ required for the stable orbit to be at $\theta=45^{\circ}$.
(f) For the steady orbit found in (e) consider small perturbations of the orbit. Find the frequency with which the pendulum oscillates around $\theta=45^{\circ}$.
6. Consider a mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ that is connected to a wall by a spring with spring constant $\boldsymbol{k}$. A second identical mass $\boldsymbol{m}$ is connected to the first mass by an identical spring. Motion is confined to the $\boldsymbol{x}$ direction.
(a) Write the Lagrangian in terms of the positions of the two masses $\boldsymbol{x}_{1}$ and $\boldsymbol{x}_{2}$.
(b) Solve for the equations of motion.
(c) Find two solutions of the type

$$
x_{1}=A e^{i \omega t}, \quad x_{2}=B e^{i \omega t}
$$

Solve for $\boldsymbol{A} / \boldsymbol{B}$ and $\boldsymbol{\omega}$. Express your answers in terms of $\omega_{0}^{2}=k / m$.
7. Consider two masses $\boldsymbol{m}_{\mathbf{1}}$ and $\boldsymbol{m}_{\mathbf{2}}$ interacting according to a potential $V\left(\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{\mathbf{1}}-\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{\boldsymbol{2}}\right)$.
(a) Write the Lagrangian in terms of the generalized coordinates $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\mathrm{cm}}=\left(\boldsymbol{m}_{1} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{\mathbf{1}}+\boldsymbol{m}_{\mathbf{2}} \overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{\boldsymbol{2}}\right) /\left(\boldsymbol{m}_{\mathbf{1}}+\right.$ $\boldsymbol{m}_{\mathbf{2}}$ ) and $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}=\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{1}-\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{r}}_{2}$, and their derivatives.
(b) Using the independence of the Lagrangian with respect to $\overrightarrow{\boldsymbol{R}}_{\mathrm{cm}}$, find expressions for the conserved total momentum.

